

# Code Commentary On The Linux Virtual Memory Manager

---

Mel Gorman

28th February 2003

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Boot Memory Allocator</b>	<b>8</b>
1.1	Representing the Boot Map . . . . .	8
1.2	Initialising the Boot Memory Allocator . . . . .	9
	Function: setup_memory . . . . .	9
	Function: init_bootmem . . . . .	12
	Function: init_bootmem_node . . . . .	12
	Function: init_bootmem_core . . . . .	13
1.3	Allocating Memory . . . . .	14
	Function: reserve_bootmem . . . . .	14
	Function: reserve_bootmem_node . . . . .	14
	Function: reserve_bootmem_core . . . . .	14
	Function: alloc_bootmem . . . . .	16
	Function: __alloc_bootmem . . . . .	16
	Function: alloc_bootmem_node . . . . .	17
	Function: __alloc_bootmem_node . . . . .	17
	Function: __alloc_bootmem_core . . . . .	18
1.4	Freeing Memory . . . . .	23
	Function: free_bootmem . . . . .	23
	Function: free_bootmem_core . . . . .	23
1.5	Retiring the Boot Memory Allocator . . . . .	24
	Function: mem_init . . . . .	24
	Function: free_pages_init . . . . .	26
	Function: free_all_bootmem . . . . .	27
	Function: free_all_bootmem_core . . . . .	28
<b>2</b>	<b>Physical Page Management</b>	<b>30</b>
2.1	Allocating Pages . . . . .	30
	Function: alloc_pages . . . . .	30
	Function: _alloc_pages . . . . .	32
	Function: __alloc_pages . . . . .	33
	Function: rmqueue . . . . .	37
	Function: expand . . . . .	39
2.2	Free Pages . . . . .	40
	Function: __free_pages . . . . .	41
	Function: __free_pages_ok . . . . .	41

2.3	Page Allocate Helper Functions . . . . .	45
	Function: alloc_page . . . . .	46
	Function: __get_free_page . . . . .	46
	Function: __get_free_pages . . . . .	46
	Function: __get_dma_pages . . . . .	46
	Function: get_zeroed_page . . . . .	47
2.4	Page Free Helper Functions . . . . .	47
	Function: free_pages . . . . .	47
	Function: __free_page . . . . .	48
<b>3</b>	<b>Non-Contiguous Memory Allocation</b>	<b>49</b>
3.1	Allocating A Non-Contiguous Area . . . . .	49
	Function: vmalloc . . . . .	49
	Function: __vmalloc . . . . .	51
	Function: get_vm_area . . . . .	52
	Function: vmalloc_area_pages . . . . .	54
	Function: alloc_area_pmd . . . . .	55
	Function: alloc_area_pte . . . . .	56
3.2	Freeing A Non-Contiguous Area . . . . .	57
	Function: vfree . . . . .	57
	Function: vmfree_area_pages . . . . .	60
	Function: free_area_pmd . . . . .	60
	Function: free_area_pte . . . . .	61
<b>4</b>	<b>Slab Allocator</b>	<b>64</b>
4.0.1	Cache Creation . . . . .	64
	Function: kmem_cache_create . . . . .	64
4.0.2	Calculating the Number of Objects on a Slab . . . . .	74
	Function: kmem_cache_estimate . . . . .	74
4.0.3	Cache Shrinking . . . . .	75
	Function: kmem_cache_shrink . . . . .	75
	Function: __kmem_cache_shrink . . . . .	77
	Function: __kmem_cache_shrink_locked . . . . .	77
4.0.4	Cache Destroying . . . . .	78
	Function: kmem_cache_destroy . . . . .	79
4.0.5	Cache Reaping . . . . .	80
	Function: kmem_cache_reap . . . . .	81
4.1	Slabs . . . . .	86
4.1.1	Storing the Slab Descriptor . . . . .	86
	Function: kmem_cache_slabmgmt . . . . .	86
	Function: kmem_find_general_cachep . . . . .	88
4.1.2	Slab Structure . . . . .	88
4.1.3	Slab Creation . . . . .	88
	Function: kmem_cache_grow . . . . .	89
4.1.4	Slab Destroying . . . . .	93

	Function: kmem_slab_destroy . . . . .	94
4.2	Objects . . . . .	94
4.2.1	Initialising Objects in a Slab . . . . .	95
	Function: kmem_cache_init_objs . . . . .	95
4.2.2	Object Allocation . . . . .	97
	Function: kmem_cache_alloc . . . . .	97
	Function: __kmem_cache_alloc (UP Case) . . . . .	97
	Function: __kmem_cache_alloc (SMP Case) . . . . .	98
	Function: kmem_cache_alloc_head . . . . .	100
	Function: kmem_cache_alloc_one . . . . .	100
	Function: kmem_cache_alloc_one_tail . . . . .	101
	Function: kmem_cache_alloc_batch . . . . .	103
4.2.3	Object Freeing . . . . .	104
	Function: kmem_cache_free . . . . .	104
	Function: __kmem_cache_free . . . . .	105
	Function: __kmem_cache_free . . . . .	105
	Function: kmem_cache_free_one . . . . .	107
	Function: free_block . . . . .	108
	Function: __free_block . . . . .	109
4.3	Sizes Cache . . . . .	109
	Function: kmem_cache_sizes_init . . . . .	109
4.3.1	kmalloc . . . . .	111
	Function: kmalloc . . . . .	111
4.3.2	kfree . . . . .	112
	Function: kfree . . . . .	112
4.4	Per-CPU Object Cache . . . . .	113
4.4.1	Describing the Per-CPU Object Cache . . . . .	113
4.4.2	Adding/Removing Objects from the Per-CPU Cache . . . . .	114
4.4.3	Enabling Per-CPU Caches . . . . .	114
	Function: enable_all_cpucaches . . . . .	114
	Function: enable_cpucache . . . . .	115
	Function: kmem_tune_cpucache . . . . .	116
4.4.4	Updating Per-CPU Information . . . . .	118
	Function: smp_function_all_cpus . . . . .	119
	Function: do_ccupdate_local . . . . .	119
4.4.5	Draining a Per-CPU Cache . . . . .	120
	Function: drain_cpu_caches . . . . .	120
4.5	Slab Allocator Initialisation . . . . .	121
	Function: kmem_cache_init . . . . .	122
4.6	Interfacing with the Buddy Allocator . . . . .	122
	Function: kmem_getpages . . . . .	122
	Function: kmem_freepages . . . . .	123

<b>5</b>	<b>Process Address Space</b>	<b>124</b>
5.1	Managing the Address Space . . . . .	124
5.2	Process Memory Descriptors . . . . .	124
5.2.1	Allocating a Descriptor . . . . .	126
	Function: <code>allocate_mm</code> . . . . .	126
	Function: <code>mm_alloc</code> . . . . .	127
5.2.2	Initialising a Descriptor . . . . .	127
	Function: <code>copy_mm</code> . . . . .	127
	Function: <code>mm_init</code> . . . . .	130
5.2.3	Destroying a Descriptor . . . . .	130
	Function: <code>mmput</code> . . . . .	131
	Function: <code>mmdrop</code> . . . . .	131
	Function: <code>__mmdrop</code> . . . . .	132
5.3	Memory Regions . . . . .	132
5.3.1	Creating A Memory Region . . . . .	136
	Function: <code>do_mmap_pgoff</code> . . . . .	136
5.3.2	Finding a Mapped Memory Region . . . . .	146
	Function: <code>find_vma</code> . . . . .	146
	Function: <code>find_vma_prev</code> . . . . .	148
	Function: <code>find_vma_intersection</code> . . . . .	149
5.3.3	Finding a Free Memory Region . . . . .	150
	Function: <code>get_unmapped_area</code> . . . . .	150
	Function: <code>arch_get_unmapped_area</code> . . . . .	151
5.3.4	Inserting a memory region . . . . .	152
	Function: <code>__insert_vm_struct</code> . . . . .	152
	Function: <code>find_vma_prepare</code> . . . . .	154
	Function: <code>vma_link</code> . . . . .	155
	Function: <code>__vma_link</code> . . . . .	156
	Function: <code>__vma_link_list</code> . . . . .	157
	Function: <code>__vma_link_rb</code> . . . . .	157
	Function: <code>__vma_link_file</code> . . . . .	157
5.3.5	Merging contiguous region . . . . .	158
	Function: <code>vma_merge</code> . . . . .	158
	Function: <code>can_vma_merge</code> . . . . .	161
5.3.6	Remapping and moving a memory region . . . . .	161
	Function: <code>sys_mremap</code> . . . . .	161
	Function: <code>do_mremap</code> . . . . .	162
	Function: <code>move_vma</code> . . . . .	167
	Function: <code>move_page_tables</code> . . . . .	172
	Function: <code>move_one_page</code> . . . . .	174
	Function: <code>get_one_pte</code> . . . . .	174
	Function: <code>alloc_one_pte</code> . . . . .	175
	Function: <code>copy_one_pte</code> . . . . .	176
5.3.7	Locking a Memory Region . . . . .	176
	Function: <code>sys_mlock</code> . . . . .	176

	Function: sys_mlockall . . . . .	178
	Function: do_mlock . . . . .	179
5.3.8	Unlocking the region . . . . .	181
	Function: sys_munlock . . . . .	181
	Function: sys_munlockall . . . . .	182
5.3.9	Fixing up regions after locking/unlocking . . . . .	182
	Function: mlock_fixup . . . . .	182
	Function: mlock_fixup_all . . . . .	184
	Function: mlock_fixup_start . . . . .	184
	Function: mlock_fixup_end . . . . .	185
	Function: mlock_fixup_middle . . . . .	186
5.3.10	Deleting a memory region . . . . .	188
	Function: do_munmap . . . . .	188
	Function: unmap_fixup . . . . .	192
5.3.11	Deleting all memory regions . . . . .	196
	Function: exit_mmap . . . . .	196
5.4	Page Fault Handler . . . . .	198
	Function: do_page_fault . . . . .	198
5.4.1	Handling the Page Fault . . . . .	208
	Function: handle_mm_fault . . . . .	208
	Function: handle_pte_fault . . . . .	209
5.4.2	Demand Allocation . . . . .	211
	Function: do_no_page . . . . .	211
	Function: do_anonymous_page . . . . .	214
5.4.3	Demand Paging . . . . .	216
	Function: do_swap_page . . . . .	216
5.4.4	Copy On Write (COW) Pages . . . . .	219
<b>6</b>	<b>High Memory Management</b>	<b>222</b>
6.1	Mapping High Memory Pages . . . . .	222
	Function: kmap . . . . .	222
	Function: kmap_high . . . . .	223
	Function: map_new_virtual . . . . .	224
	Function: flush_all_zero_pkmaps . . . . .	226
6.1.1	Unmapping Pages . . . . .	227
	Function: kunmap . . . . .	227
	Function: kunmap_high . . . . .	227
6.2	Mapping High Memory Pages Atomically . . . . .	228
	Function: kmap_atomic . . . . .	229
	Function: kunmap_atomic . . . . .	230
6.3	Bounce Buffers . . . . .	230
	Function: create_buffers . . . . .	230
	Function: alloc_bounce_bh . . . . .	232
	Function: alloc_bounce_page . . . . .	234
6.3.1	Copying via Bounce Buffers . . . . .	235

	Function: bounce_end_io_write . . . . .	235
	Function: bounce_end_io_read . . . . .	235
	Function: copy_from_high_bh . . . . .	236
	Function: copy_to_high_bh_irq . . . . .	236
	Function: bounce_end_io . . . . .	237
6.4	Emergency Pools . . . . .	238
	Function: init_emergency_pool . . . . .	238
<b>7</b>	<b>Page Frame Reclamation</b>	<b>240</b>
7.1	Page Swap Daemon . . . . .	240
	Function: kswapd_init . . . . .	240
	Function: kswapd . . . . .	240
	Function: kswapd_can_sleep . . . . .	242
	Function: kswapd_can_sleep_pgdat . . . . .	242
	Function: kswapd_balance . . . . .	243
	Function: kswapd_balance_pgdat . . . . .	243
7.2	Page Cache . . . . .	244
	Function: lru_cache_add . . . . .	244
	Function: add_page_to_active_list . . . . .	245
	Function: add_page_to_inactive_list . . . . .	245
	Function: lru_cache_del . . . . .	245
	Function: __lru_cache_del . . . . .	246
	Function: del_page_from_active_list . . . . .	246
	Function: del_page_from_inactive_list . . . . .	246
	Function: mark_page_accessed . . . . .	247
	Function: activate_lock . . . . .	247
	Function: activate_page_nolock . . . . .	247
	Function: page_cache_get . . . . .	248
	Function: page_cache_release . . . . .	248
	Function: add_to_page_cache . . . . .	248
	Function: __add_to_page_cache . . . . .	249
7.3	Shrinking all caches . . . . .	249
	Function: shrink_caches . . . . .	249
	Function: try_to_free_pages . . . . .	252
	Function: try_to_free_pages_zone . . . . .	252
7.4	Refilling inactive_list . . . . .	253
	Function: refill_inactive . . . . .	253
7.5	Reclaiming pages from the page cache . . . . .	254
	Function: shrink_cache . . . . .	254
7.6	Swapping Out Process Pages . . . . .	261
	Function: swap_out . . . . .	262
	Function: swap_out_mm . . . . .	263
	Function: swap_out_vma . . . . .	265
	Function: swap_out_pgd . . . . .	266
	Function: swap_out_pmd . . . . .	267

	Function: try_to_swap_out . . . . .	268
<b>8</b>	<b>Swap Management</b>	<b>273</b>
8.1	Describing the Swap Area . . . . .	273
8.2	Scanning for free entries . . . . .	273
	Function: get_swap_page . . . . .	273
	Function: scan_swap_map . . . . .	275
8.3	Swap Cache . . . . .	278
	Function: add_to_swap_cache . . . . .	278
	Function: swap_duplicate . . . . .	279
	Function: swap_free . . . . .	280
	Function: swap_entry_free . . . . .	281
	Function: swap_info_get . . . . .	282
	Function: swap_info_put . . . . .	283
	Function: lookup_swap_cache . . . . .	283
	Function: find_get_page . . . . .	284
	Function: __find_get_page . . . . .	284
	Function: __find_page_nolock . . . . .	285
8.4	Activating a Swap Area . . . . .	285
	Function: sys_swapon . . . . .	285
8.5	Deactivating a Swap Area . . . . .	296
	Function: sys_swapoff . . . . .	296
	Function: try_to_unuse . . . . .	300



# List of Figures

1.1	Call Graph: setup_memory . . . . .	9
2.1	alloc_pages Call Graph . . . . .	31
2.2	__free_pages Call Graph . . . . .	41
3.1	vmalloc . . . . .	50
3.2	vfree . . . . .	58
4.1	kmem_cache_create . . . . .	66
4.2	kmem_cache_shrink . . . . .	76
4.3	kmem_cache_destroy . . . . .	79
4.4	kmem_cache_reap . . . . .	81
4.5	kmem_cache_grow . . . . .	89
4.6	kmem_slab_destroy . . . . .	93
4.7	kmem_cache_alloc UP . . . . .	97
4.8	kmem_cache_free . . . . .	105
4.9	kmalloc . . . . .	111
4.10	kfree . . . . .	112
5.1	sys_mmap2 . . . . .	137
5.2	Call Graph: get_unmapped_area . . . . .	150
5.3	insert_vm_struct . . . . .	153
5.4	Call Graph: sys_mremap . . . . .	161
5.5	Call Graph: move_vma . . . . .	168
5.6	Call Graph: move_page_tables . . . . .	173
5.7	do_munmap . . . . .	188
5.8	do_page_fault . . . . .	198
5.9	do_no_page . . . . .	211
5.10	do_swap_page . . . . .	220
5.11	do_wp_page . . . . .	221
6.1	Call Graph: kmap . . . . .	222
6.2	Call Graph: create_bounce . . . . .	231
7.1	shrink_cache . . . . .	250
7.2	Call Graph: swap_out . . . . .	261

8.1	Call Graph: get_swap_page . . . . .	273
-----	-------------------------------------	-----

# List of Tables

2.1	Physical Pages Allocation API . . . . .	30
2.2	Physical Pages Free API . . . . .	40
3.1	Non-Contiguous Memory Allocation API . . . . .	49
3.2	Non-Contiguous Memory Free API . . . . .	57
4.1	Slab Allocator API for caches . . . . .	65

# Chapter 1

## Boot Memory Allocator

### 1.1 Representing the Boot Map

A `bootmem_data` struct exists for each node of memory in the system. It contains the information needed for the boot memory allocator to allocate memory for a node such as the bitmap representing allocated pages and where the memory is located. It is declared as follows in `include/linux/bootmem.h`;

```
25 typedef struct bootmem_data {
26     unsigned long node_boot_start;
27     unsigned long node_low_pfn;
28     void *node_bootmem_map;
29     unsigned long last_offset;
30     unsigned long last_pos;
31 } bootmem_data_t;
```

`node_boot_start` is the starting physical address of the represented block

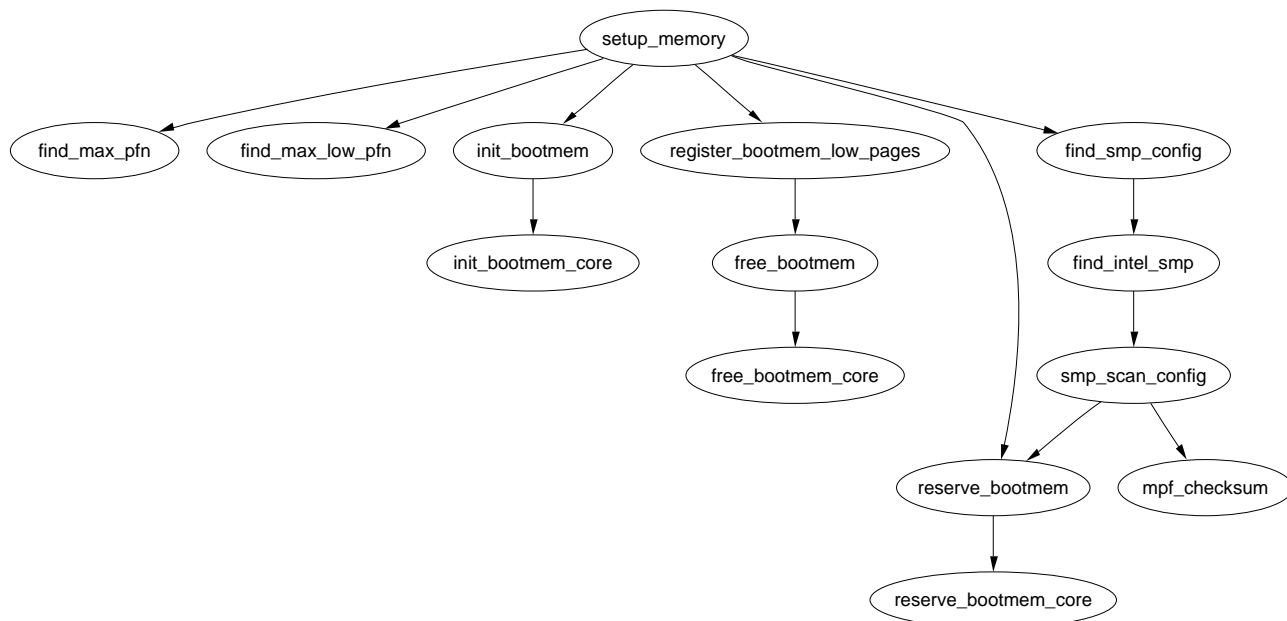
`node_low_pfn` is the end physical address, in other words, the end of the `ZONE_NORMAL` this node represents

`node_bootmem_map` is the location of the bitmap representing allocated or free pages with each bit

`last_offset` is the offset within the the page of the end of the last allocation. If 0, the page used is full

`last_pos` is the the PFN of the page used with the last allocation. Using this with the `last_offset` field, a test can be made to see if allocations can be merged with the page used for the last allocation rather than using up a full new page

## 1.2 Initialising the Boot Memory Allocator

Figure 1.1: Call Graph: `setup_memory`

**Function:** `setup_memory` (*arch/i386/kernel/setup.c*)

This function gets the necessary information to give to the boot memory allocator to initialise itself. It is broken up into a number of different tasks.

- Find the start and ending Page Frame Number (PFN) for low memory (`min_low_pfn`, `max_low_pfn`), the start and end PFN for high memory (`highstart_pfn`, `highend_pfn`) and the PFN for the last page in the system (`max_pfn`).
- Initialise the `bootmem_data` structure and declare which pages may be used by the boot memory allocator
- Mark all pages usable by the system as “free” and then reserve the pages used by the bitmap representing the pages
- Reserve pages used by the SMP config or the initrd image if one exists

```

949 static unsigned long __init setup_memory(void)
950 {
951     unsigned long bootmap_size, start_pfn, max_low_pfn;
952
953     /*
954      * partially used pages are not usable - thus
955      * we are rounding upwards:
  
```

```

956     */
957     start_pfn = PFN_UP(__pa(&_end));
958
959     find_max_pfn();
960
961     max_low_pfn = find_max_low_pfn();
962
963 #ifdef CONFIG_HIGHMEM
964     highstart_pfn = highend_pfn = max_pfn;
965     if (max_pfn > max_low_pfn) {
966         highstart_pfn = max_low_pfn;
967     }
968     printk(KERN_NOTICE "%ldMB HIGHMEM available.\n",
969            pages_to_mb(highend_pfn - highstart_pfn));
970 #endif
971     printk(KERN_NOTICE "%ldMB LOWMEM available.\n",
972            pages_to_mb(max_low_pfn));

```

957 `PFN_UP` takes a physical address, rounds it up to the next page and returns the page frame number. `_end` is the address of the end of the loaded kernel image so `start_pfn` is now the offset of the first physical page frame that may be used

959 `find_max_pfn()` loops through the e820 map searching for the highest available pfn

961 `find_max_low_pfn()` finds the highest page frame that may be addressed by `ZONE_NORMAL`

964-969 If high memory is enabled, start with a high memory region of 0. If it turns out there is memory after, `max_low_pfn`, put the start of high memory (`highstart_pfn`) there and the end of high memory at `max_pfn`. Print out an informational message on the availability of high memory

971-972 Print out an informational message on the amount of low memory

```

976     bootmap_size = init_bootmem(start_pfn, max_low_pfn);
977
978     register_bootmem_low_pages(max_low_pfn);
979
980     reserve_bootmem(HIGH_MEMORY, (PFN_PHYS(start_pfn) +
981                                bootmap_size + PAGE_SIZE-1) - (HIGH_MEMORY));
982
983     reserve_bootmem(0, PAGE_SIZE);
984
985 #ifdef CONFIG_SMP

```

```

1001         reserve_bootmem(PAGE_SIZE, PAGE_SIZE);
1002 #endif

976 init_bootmem() initialises the bootmem_data struct for the config_page_data
    node. It sets where physical memory begins and ends for the node, allocates
    a bitmap representing the pages and sets all pages as reserved

978 registered_bootmem_low_pages() reads through the whole e820 map and calls
    free_bootmem() for all usable pages in the running system

986-987 Reserve the pages that are being used by the bitmap representing the
    pages

993 Reserve page 0 as it is often a special page used by the bios

1001 Reserve an extra page which is required by the trampoline code. The tram-
    poline code deals with how userspace enters kernel space

1003
1004 #ifdef CONFIG_X86_LOCAL_APIC
1005     /*
1006     * Find and reserve possible boot-time SMP configuration:
1007     */
1008     find_smp_config();
1009 #endif
1010 #ifdef CONFIG_BLK_DEV_INITRD
1011     if (LOADER_TYPE && INITRD_START) {
1012         if (INITRD_START + INITRD_SIZE <= (max_low_pfn <<
PAGE_SHIFT)) {
1013             reserve_bootmem(INITRD_START, INITRD_SIZE);
1014             initrd_start =
1015                 INITRD_START ? INITRD_START + PAGE_OFFSET
: 0;
1016             initrd_end = initrd_start+INITRD_SIZE;
1017         }
1018         else {
1019             printk(KERN_ERR "initrd extends beyond end of
memory "
1020                 "(0x%08lx > 0x%08lx)\ndisabling initrd\n",
1021                 INITRD_START + INITRD_SIZE,
1022                 max_low_pfn << PAGE_SHIFT);
1023             initrd_start = 0;
1024         }
1025     }
1026 #endif
1027

```

```
1028         return max_low_pfn;
1029 }
```

1008 This function reserves memory that stores config information about the SMP setup

1010-1026 If initrd is enabled, the memory containing its image will be reserved. initrd provides a tiny filesystem image which is used to boot the system

1028 Return the upper limit of addressable memory in ZONE\_NORMAL

**Function: `init_bootmem`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

Called by UMA architectures to initialise their bootmem data.

```
304 unsigned long __init init_bootmem (unsigned long start,
                                     unsigned long pages)
305 {
306     max_low_pfn = pages;
307     min_low_pfn = start;
308     return(init_bootmem_core(&contig_page_data, start, 0, pages));
309 }
```

304 Confusingly, the `pages` parameter is actually the end PFN of the memory addressable by this node, not the number of pages as the name implies

306 Set the max PFN addressable by this node in case the architecture dependent code did not

307 Set the min PFN addressable by this node in case the architecture dependent code did not

308 Call `init_bootmem_core()` which does the real work of initialising the `bootmem_data`

**Function: `init_bootmem_node`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

Used by NUMA architectures to initialise bootmem data for a given node

```
284 unsigned long __init init_bootmem_node (pg_data_t *pgdat,
                                          unsigned long freepfn,
                                          unsigned long startpfn,
                                          unsigned long endpfn)
285 {
286     return(init_bootmem_core(pgdat, freepfn, startpfn, endpfn));
287 }
```

286 Just call `init_bootmem_core()` directly



**Function: `init_bootmem_core`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

Initialises the appropriate `bootmem_data_t` struct and inserts the node into the `pgdat_list` list of node.

```

46 static unsigned long __init init_bootmem_core (pg_data_t *pgdat,
47         unsigned long mapstart, unsigned long start, unsigned long end)
48 {
49     bootmem_data_t *bdata = pgdat->bdata;
50     unsigned long mapsize = ((end - start)+7)/8;
51
52     pgdat->node_next = pgdat_list;
53     pgdat_list = pgdat;
54
55     mapsize = (mapsize + (sizeof(long) - 1UL)) & ~(sizeof(long) - 1UL);
56     bdata->node_bootmem_map = phys_to_virt(mapstart << PAGE_SHIFT);
57     bdata->node_boot_start = (start << PAGE_SHIFT);
58     bdata->node_low_pfn = end;
59
60     /*
61      * Initially all pages are reserved - setup_arch() has to
62      * register free RAM areas explicitly.
63      */
64     memset(bdata->node_bootmem_map, 0xff, mapsize);
65
66     return mapsize;
67 }

```

46 The parameters are;

`pgdat` is the node descriptor been initialised  
`mapstart` is the beginning of the memory that will be usable  
`start` is the beginning PFN of the node  
`end` is the end PFN of the node

50 Each page requires one bit to represent it so the size of the map required is the number of pages in this node rounded up to the nearest multiple of 8 and then divided by 8 to give the number of bytes required

52-53 As the node will be shortly considered initialised, insert it into the global `pgdat_list`

55 Round the `mapsize` up to the closest word boundary

56 Convert the `mapstart` to a virtual address and store it in `bdata->node_bootmem_map`

57 Convert the starting PFN to a physical address and store it on `node_boot_start`

58 Store the end PFN of ZONE\_NORMAL in `node_low_pfn`

64 Fill the full map with 1's marking all pages as allocated. It is up to the architecture dependent code to mark the usable pages

## 1.3 Allocating Memory

**Function: `reserve_bootmem`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```
311 void __init reserve_bootmem (unsigned long addr, unsigned long size)
312 {
313     reserve_bootmem_core(contig_page_data.bdata, addr, size);
314 }
```

313 Just call `reserve_bootmem_core()` passing the bootmem data from `contig_page_data` as the node to reserve memory from

**Function: `reserve_bootmem_node`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```
289 void __init reserve_bootmem_node (pg_data_t *pgdat,
                                     unsigned long physaddr,
                                     unsigned long size)
290 {
291     reserve_bootmem_core(pgdat->bdata, physaddr, size);
292 }
```

291 Just call `reserve_bootmem_core()` passing it the bootmem data of the requested node

**Function: `reserve_bootmem_core`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```
74 static void __initreserve_bootmem_core(bootmem_data_t *bdata,
                                         unsigned long addr,
                                         unsigned long size)
75 {
76     unsigned long i;
77     /*
78      * round up, partially reserved pages are considered
79      * fully reserved.
80      */
81     unsigned long sidx = (addr - bdata->node_boot_start)/PAGE_SIZE;
82     unsigned long eidx = (addr + size - bdata->node_boot_start +
83                          PAGE_SIZE-1)/PAGE_SIZE;
84     unsigned long end = (addr + size + PAGE_SIZE-1)/PAGE_SIZE;
85
86     if (!size) BUG();
```

```

87
88     if (sidx < 0)
89         BUG();
90     if (eidx < 0)
91         BUG();
92     if (sidx >= eidx)
93         BUG();
94     if ((addr >> PAGE_SHIFT) >= bdata->node_low_pfn)
95         BUG();
96     if (end > bdata->node_low_pfn)
97         BUG();
98     for (i = sidx; i < eidx; i++)
99         if (test_and_set_bit(i, bdata->node_bootmem_map))
100             printk("hm, page %08lx reserved twice.\n",
101                    i*PAGE_SIZE);
101 }

```

- 81 The `sidx` is the starting index to serve pages from. The value is obtained by subtracting the starting address from the requested address and dividing by the size of a page
- 82 A similar calculation is made for the ending index `eidx` except that the allocation is rounded up to the nearest page. This means that requests to partially reserve a page will result in the full page being reserved
- 84 `end` is the last PFN that is affected by this reservation
- 86 Check that a non-zero value has been given
- 88-89 Check the starting index is not before the start of the node
- 90-91 Check the end index is not before the start of the node
- 92-93 Check the starting index is not after the end index
- 94-95 Check the starting address is not beyond the memory this bootmem node represents
- 96-97 Check the ending address is not beyond the memory this bootmem node represents
- 88-100 Starting with `sidx` and finishing with `eidx`, test and set the bit in the bootmem map that represents the page marking it as allocated. If the bit was already set to 1, print out a message saying it was reserved twice

**Function:** `alloc_bootmem` (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```

38 #define alloc_bootmem(x) \
39     __alloc_bootmem((x), SMP_CACHE_BYTES, __pa(MAX_DMA_ADDRESS))
40 #define alloc_bootmem_low(x) \
41     __alloc_bootmem((x), SMP_CACHE_BYTES, 0)
42 #define alloc_bootmem_pages(x) \
43     __alloc_bootmem((x), PAGE_SIZE, __pa(MAX_DMA_ADDRESS))
44 #define alloc_bootmem_low_pages(x) \
45     __alloc_bootmem((x), PAGE_SIZE, 0)

```

39 `alloc_bootmem()` will align to the L1 hardware cache and start searching for a page after the maximum address usable for DMA

40 `alloc_bootmem_low()` will align to the L1 hardware cache and start searching from page 0

42 `alloc_bootmem_pages()` will align the allocation to a page size so that full pages will be allocated starting from the maximum address usable for DMA

44 `alloc_bootmem_low_pages()` will align the allocation to a page size so that full pages will be allocated starting from physical address 0

**Function:** `__alloc_bootmem` (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```

326 void * __init __alloc_bootmem (unsigned long size,
                                unsigned long align, unsigned long goal)
327 {
328     pg_data_t *pgdat;
329     void *ptr;
330
331     for_each_pgdat(pgdat)
332         if ((ptr = __alloc_bootmem_core(pgdat->bdata, size,
333                                         align, goal)))
334             return(ptr);
335
336     /*
337      * Whoops, we cannot satisfy the allocation request.
338      */
339     printk(KERN_ALERT "bootmem alloc of %lu bytes failed!\n", size);
340     panic("Out of memory");
341     return NULL;
342 }

```

326 The parameters are;

`size` is the size of the requested allocation

`align` is the desired alignment and must be a power of 2. Currently either `SMP_CACHE_BYTES` or `PAGE_SIZE`

`goal` is the starting address to begin searching from

331-334 Cycle through all available nodes and try allocating from each in turn. In the UMA case, this will just allocate from the `contig_page_data` node

349-340 If the allocation fails, the system is not going to be able to boot so the kernel panics

**Function:** `alloc_bootmem_node` (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```
53 #define alloc_bootmem_node(pgdat, x) \
54     __alloc_bootmem_node((pgdat), (x), SMP_CACHE_BYTES,
55                          __pa(MAX_DMA_ADDRESS))
56 #define alloc_bootmem_pages_node(pgdat, x) \
57     __alloc_bootmem_node((pgdat), (x), PAGE_SIZE,
58                          __pa(MAX_DMA_ADDRESS))
59 #define alloc_bootmem_low_pages_node(pgdat, x) \
60     __alloc_bootmem_node((pgdat), (x), PAGE_SIZE, 0)
```

53-54 `alloc_bootmem_node()` will allocate from the requested node and align to the L1 hardware cache and start searching for a page after the maximum address usable for DMA

55-56 `alloc_bootmem_pages()` will allocate from the requested node and align the allocation to a page size so that full pages will be allocated starting from the maximum address usable for DMA

57-58 `alloc_bootmem_low_pages()` will allocate from the requested node and align the allocation to a page size so that full pages will be allocated starting from physical address 0

**Function:** `__alloc_bootmem_node` (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```
344 void * __init __alloc_bootmem_node (pg_data_t *pgdat,
345                                     unsigned long size,
346                                     unsigned long align,
347                                     unsigned long goal)
348 {
349     void *ptr;
350     ptr = __alloc_bootmem_core(pgdat->bdata, size, align, goal);
351     if (ptr)
352         return (ptr);
353     /*
```

```

353     * Whoops, we cannot satisfy the allocation request.
354     */
355     printk(KERN_ALERT "bootmem alloc of %lu bytes failed!\n", size);
356     panic("Out of memory");
357     return NULL;
358 }

```

344 The parameters are the same as for `__alloc_bootmem_node()` except the node to allocate from is specified

348 Call the core function `__alloc_bootmem_core()` to perform the allocation

349-350 Return a pointer if it was successful

355-356 Otherwise print out a message and panic the kernel as the system will not boot if memory can not be allocated even now

**Function:** `__alloc_bootmem_core` (*mm/bootmem.c*)

This is the core function for allocating memory from a specified node with the boot memory allocator. It is quite large and broken up into the following tasks;

- Function preamble. Make sure the parameters are sane
- Calculate the starting address to scan from based on the goal parameter
- Check to see if this allocation may be merged with the page used for the previous allocation to save memory.
- Mark the pages allocated as 1 in the bitmap and zero out the contents of the pages

```

144 static void * __init __alloc_bootmem_core (bootmem_data_t *bdata,
145     unsigned long size, unsigned long align, unsigned long goal)
146 {
147     unsigned long i, start = 0;
148     void *ret;
149     unsigned long offset, remaining_size;
150     unsigned long areasize, preferred, incr;
151     unsigned long eidx = bdata->node_low_pfn -
152         (bdata->node_boot_start >> PAGE_SHIFT);
153
154     if (!size) BUG();
155
156     if (align & (align-1))
157         BUG();
158
159     offset = 0;

```

```

160     if (align &&
161         (bdata->node_boot_start & (align - 1UL)) != 0)
162         offset = (align - (bdata->node_boot_start &
                             (align - 1UL)));
163     offset >>= PAGE_SHIFT;

```

Function preamble, make sure the parameters are sane

144 The parameters are;

`bdata` is the bootmem for the struct being allocated from

`size` is the size of the requested allocation

`align` is the desired alignment for the allocation. Must be a power of 2

`goal` is the preferred address to allocate above if possible

151 Calculate the ending bit index `eidx` which returns the highest page index that may be used for the allocation

154 Call `BUG()` if a request size of 0 is specified

156-156 If the alignment is not a power of 2, call `BUG()`

159 The default offset for alignments is 0

160 If an alignment has been specified and...

161 And the requested alignment is the same alignment as the start of the node then calculate the offset to use

162 The offset to use is the requested alignment masked against the lower bits of the starting address. In reality, this `offset` will likely be identical to `align` for the prevalent values of `align`

```

169     if (goal && (goal >= bdata->node_boot_start) &&
170         ((goal >> PAGE_SHIFT) < bdata->node_low_pfn)) {
171         preferred = goal - bdata->node_boot_start;
172     } else
173         preferred = 0;
174
175     preferred = ((preferred + align - 1) & ~(align - 1)) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
176     preferred += offset;
177     areasize = (size+PAGE_SIZE-1)/PAGE_SIZE;
178     incr = align >> PAGE_SHIFT ? : 1;

```

Calculate the starting PFN to start scanning from based on the `goal` parameter.

169 If a goal has been specified and the goal is after the starting address for this node and the PFN of the goal is less than the last PFN addressable by this node then ....

170 The preferred offset to start from is the goal minus the beginning of the memory addressable by this node

173 Else the preferred offset is 0

175-176 Adjust the preferred address to take the offset into account so that the address will be correctly aligned

177 The number of pages that will be affected by this allocation is stored in `areasize`

178 `incr` is the number of pages that have to be skipped to satisfy alignment requirements if they are over one page

```

179
180 restart_scan:
181     for (i = preferred; i < eid; i += incr) {
182         unsigned long j;
183         if (test_bit(i, bdata->node_bootmem_map))
184             continue;
185         for (j = i + 1; j < i + areasize; ++j) {
186             if (j >= eid)
187                 goto fail_block;
188             if (test_bit (j, bdata->node_bootmem_map))
189                 goto fail_block;
190         }
191         start = i;
192         goto found;
193     fail_block:;
194     }
195     if (preferred) {
196         preferred = offset;
197         goto restart_scan;
198     }
199     return NULL;

```

Scan through memory looking for a block large enough to satisfy this request

180 If the allocation could not be satisfied starting from `goal`, this label is jumped back to for rescanning

181-194 Starting from `preferred`, scan linearly searching for a free block large enough to satisfy the request. Walk the address space in `incr` steps to satisfy alignments greater than one page. If the alignment is less than a page, `incr` will just be 1



183-184 Test the bit, if it is already 1, it is not free so move to the next page

185-190 Scan the next `areasize` number of pages and see if they are also free. It fails if the end of the addressable space is reached (`eidx`) or one of the pages is already in use

191-192 A free block is found so record the `start` and jump to the found block

195-198 The allocation failed so start again from the beginning

199 If that also failed, return NULL which will result in a kernel panic

```

200 found:
201     if (start >= eidx)
202         BUG();
203
209     if (align <= PAGE_SIZE
210         && bdata->last_offset && bdata->last_pos+1 == start) {
211         offset = (bdata->last_offset+align-1) & ~(align-1);
212         if (offset > PAGE_SIZE)
213             BUG();
214         remaining_size = PAGE_SIZE-offset;
215         if (size < remaining_size) {
216             areasize = 0;
217             // last_pos unchanged
218             bdata->last_offset = offset+size;
219             ret = phys_to_virt(bdata->last_pos*PAGE_SIZE +
offset +
220                                     bdata->node_boot_start);
221         } else {
222             remaining_size = size - remaining_size;
223             areasize = (remaining_size+PAGE_SIZE-1)/PAGE_SIZE;
224             ret = phys_to_virt(bdata->last_pos*PAGE_SIZE +
225                                     offset +
226                                     bdata->node_boot_start);
226             bdata->last_pos = start+areasize-1;
227             bdata->last_offset = remaining_size;
228         }
229         bdata->last_offset &= ~PAGE_MASK;
230     } else {
231         bdata->last_pos = start + areasize - 1;
232         bdata->last_offset = size & ~PAGE_MASK;
233         ret = phys_to_virt(start * PAGE_SIZE +
234                                     bdata->node_boot_start);

```

Test to see if this allocation may be merged with the previous allocation.

- 201-202 Check that the start of the allocation is not after the addressable memory. This check was just made so it is redundant
- 209-230 Try and merge with the previous allocation if the alignment is less than a `PAGE_SIZE`, the previously page has space in it (`last_offset != 0`) and that the previously used page is adjacent to the page found for this allocation
- 231-234 Else record the pages and offset used for this allocation to be used for merging with the next allocation
- 211 Update the offset to use to be aligned correctly for the requested `align`
- 212-213 If the offset now goes over the edge of a page, `BUG()` is called. This condition would require a very poor choice of alignment to be used. As the only alignment commonly used is a factor of `PAGE_SIZE`, it is impossible for normal usage
- 214 `remaining_size` is the remaining free space in the previously used page
- 215-221 If there is enough space left in the old page then use the old page totally and update the `bootmem_data` struct to reflect it
- 221-228 Else calculate how many pages in addition to this one will be required and update the `bootmem_data`
- 216 The number of pages used by this allocation is now 0
- 218 Update the `last_offset` to be the end of this allocation
- 219 Calculate the virtual address to return for the successful allocation
- 222 `remaining_size` is how space will be used in the last page used to satisfy the allocation
- 223 Calculate how many more pages are needed to satisfy the allocation
- 224 Record the address the allocation starts from
- 226 The last page used is the `start` page plus the number of additional pages required to satisfy this allocation `areasize`
- 227 The end of the allocation has already been calculated
- 229 If the offset is at the end of the page, make it 0
- 231 No merging took place so record the last page used to satisfy this allocation
- 232 Record how much of the last page was used
- 233 Record the starting virtual address of the allocation

```

238     for (i = start; i < start+areasize; i++)
239         if (test_and_set_bit(i, bdata->node_bootmem_map))
240             BUG();
241     memset(ret, 0, size);
242     return ret;
243 }

```

Mark the pages allocated as 1 in the bitmap and zero out the contents of the pages

238-240 Cycle through all pages used for this allocation and set the bit to 1 in the bitmap. If any of them are already 1, then a double allocation took place so call BUG()

241 Zero fill the pages

242 Return the address of the allocation

## 1.4 Freeing Memory

**Function: free\_bootmem** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```

294 void __init free_bootmem_node (pg_data_t *pgdat,
                                unsigned long physaddr, unsigned long size)
295 {
296     return(free_bootmem_core(pgdat->bdata, physaddr, size));
297 }

316 void __init free_bootmem (unsigned long addr, unsigned long size)
317 {
318     return(free_bootmem_core(contig_page_data.bdata, addr, size));
319 }

```

296 Call the core function with the corresponding bootmem data for the requested node

318 Call the core function with the bootmem data for contig\_page\_data

**Function: free\_bootmem\_core** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```

103 static void __init free_bootmem_core(bootmem_data_t *bdata,
                                       unsigned long addr,
                                       unsigned long size)
104 {
105     unsigned long i;
106     unsigned long start;

```

```

111     unsigned long sidx;
112     unsigned long eidx = (addr + size -
                           bdata->node_boot_start)/PAGE_SIZE;
113     unsigned long end = (addr + size)/PAGE_SIZE;
114
115     if (!size) BUG();
116     if (end > bdata->node_low_pfn)
117         BUG();
118
119     /*
120      * Round up the beginning of the address.
121      */
122     start = (addr + PAGE_SIZE-1) / PAGE_SIZE;
123     sidx = start - (bdata->node_boot_start/PAGE_SIZE);
124
125     for (i = sidx; i < eidx; i++) {
126         if (!test_and_clear_bit(i, bdata->node_bootmem_map))
127             BUG();
128     }
129 }

```

112 Calculate the end index affected as `eidx`

113 The end address is the end of the affected area rounded down to the nearest page if it is not already page aligned

115 If a size of 0 is freed, call `BUG`

116-117 If the end PFN is after the memory addressable by this node, call `BUG`

122 Round the starting address up to the nearest page if it is not already page aligned

123 Calculate the starting index to free

125-127 For all full pages that are freed by this action, clear the bit in the boot bitmap. If it is already 0, it is a double free or is memory that was never used so call `BUG`

## 1.5 Retiring the Boot Memory Allocator

**Function:** `mem_init` (*arch/i386/mm/init.d*)

The important part of this function for the boot memory allocator is that it calls `free_pages_init()`. The function is broken up into the following tasks

- Function preamble, set the PFN within the global `mem_map` for the location of high memory and zero out the system wide zero page

- Call `free_pages_init()`
- Print out an informational message on the availability of memory in the system
- Check the CPU supports PAE if the config option is enabled and test the WP bit on the CPU. This is important as without the WP bit, the function `verify_write()` has to be called for every write to userspace from the kernel. This only applies to old processors like the 386
- Fill in entries for the userspace portion of the PGD for `swapper_pg_dir`, the kernel page tables. The zero page is mapped for all entries

```

507 void __init mem_init(void)
508 {
509     int codesize, reservedpages, datasize, initsize;
510
511     if (!mem_map)
512         BUG();
513
514     set_max_mapnr_init();
515
516     high_memory = (void *) __va(max_low_pfn * PAGE_SIZE);
517
518     /* clear the zero-page */
519     memset(empty_zero_page, 0, PAGE_SIZE);

514 This function records where high memory starts in the global mem_map
    (highmem_start_page), the maximum number of pages in the system (max_mapnr
    and num_physpages) and finally the maximum number of pages that may be
    mapped by the kernel (num_mappedpages)

516 high_memory is the virtual address where high memory begins

519 Zero out the system wide zero page

520
521     reservedpages = free_pages_init();
522

512 Call free_pages_init() which tells the boot memory allocator to retire itself
    as well as initialising all pages in high memory for use with the buddy allocator

523     codesize = (unsigned long) &_etext - (unsigned long) &_text;
524     datasize = (unsigned long) &_edata - (unsigned long) &_etext;
525     initsize = (unsigned long) &__init_end - (unsigned long)
                    &__init_begin;
526

```

```

527     printk(KERN_INFO "Memory: %luk/%luk available (%dk kernel code,
                    %dk reserved, %dk data, %dk init, %ldk highmem)\n",
528             (unsigned long) nr_free_pages() << (PAGE_SHIFT-10),
529             max_mapnr << (PAGE_SHIFT-10),
530             codesize >> 10,
531             reservedpages << (PAGE_SHIFT-10),
532             datasize >> 10,
533             initsize >> 10,
534             (unsigned long) (totalhigh_pages << (PAGE_SHIFT-10))
535             );

```

Print out an informational message

523 Calculate the size of the code segment, data segment and memory used by initialisation code and data (all functions marked `__init` will be in this section)

527-535 Print out a nice message on how the availability of memory and the amount of memory consumed by the kernel

```

536
537 #if CONFIG_X86_PAE
538     if (!cpu_has_pae)
539         panic("cannot execute a PAE-enabled kernel on a PAE-less
540 CPU!");
541 #endif
542     if (boot_cpu_data.wp_works_ok < 0)
543         test_wp_bit();
544

```

538-539 If PAE is enabled but the processor does not support it, panic

541-542 Test for the availability of the WP bit

```

550 #ifndef CONFIG_SMP
551     zap_low_mappings();
552 #endif
553
554 }

```

551 Cycle through each PGD used by the userspace portion of `swapper_pg_dir` and map the zero page to it

**Function: `free_pages_init`** (*arch/i386/mm/init.c*)

This function has two important functions, to call `free_all_bootmem()` to retire the boot memory allocator and to free all high memory pages to the buddy allocator.

```

481 static int __init free_pages_init(void)
482 {
483     extern int ppro_with_ram_bug(void);
484     int bad_ppro, reservedpages, pfn;
485
486     bad_ppro = ppro_with_ram_bug();
487
488     /* this will put all low memory onto the freelists */
489     totalram_pages += free_all_bootmem();
490
491     reservedpages = 0;
492     for (pfn = 0; pfn < max_low_pfn; pfn++) {
493         /*
494          * Only count reserved RAM pages
495          */
496         if (page_is_ram(pfn) && PageReserved(mem_map+pfn))
497             reservedpages++;
498     }
499 #ifdef CONFIG_HIGHMEM
500     for (pfn = highend_pfn-1; pfn >= highstart_pfn; pfn--)
501         one_highpage_init((struct page *) (mem_map + pfn), pfn,
bad_ppro);
502     totalram_pages += totalhigh_pages;
503 #endif
504     return reservedpages;
505 }

```

486 There is a bug in the Pentium Pros that prevent certain pages in high memory being used. The function `ppro_with_ram_bug()` checks for its existence

489 Call `free_all_bootmem()` to retire the boot memory allocator

491-498 Cycle through all of memory and count the number of reserved pages that were left over by the boot memory allocator

500-501 For each page in high memory, call `one_highpage_init()`. This function clears the `PG_reserved` bit, sets the `PG_high` bit, sets the count to 1, calls `__free_pages()` to give the page to the buddy allocator and increments the `totalhigh_pages` count. Pages which kill buggy Pentium Pro's are skipped

**Function: `free_all_bootmem`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

```

299 unsigned long __init free_all_bootmem_node (pg_data_t *pgdat)
300 {
301     return(free_all_bootmem_core(pgdat));
302 }

```

```

321 unsigned long __init free_all_bootmem (void)
322 {
323     return(free_all_bootmem_core(&contig_page_data));
324 }

```

299-302 For NUMA, simply call the core function with the specified `pgdat`

321-324 For UMA, call the core function with the only node `contig_page_data`

**Function: `free_all_bootmem_core`** (*mm/bootmem.c*)

This is the core function which “retires” the boot memory allocator. It is divided into two major tasks

- For all unallocated pages known to the allocator for this node;
  - Clear the `PG_reserved` flag in its struct page
  - Set the count to 1
  - Call `__free_pages()` so that the buddy allocator (discussed next chapter) can build its free lists
- Free all pages used for the bitmap and free to them to the buddy allocator

```

245 static unsigned long __init free_all_bootmem_core(pg_data_t *pgdat)
246 {
247     struct page *page = pgdat->node_mem_map;
248     bootmem_data_t *bdata = pgdat->bdata;
249     unsigned long i, count, total = 0;
250     unsigned long idx;
251
252     if (!bdata->node_bootmem_map) BUG();
253
254     count = 0;
255     idx = bdata->node_low_pfn - (bdata->node_boot_start >> PAGE_SHIFT);
256     for (i = 0; i < idx; i++, page++) {
257         if (!test_bit(i, bdata->node_bootmem_map)) {
258             count++;
259             ClearPageReserved(page);
260             set_page_count(page, 1);
261             __free_page(page);
262         }
263     }
264     total += count;

```

252 If no map is available, it means that this node has already been freed and something woeful is wrong with the architecture dependent code so call `BUG()`



254 A running count of the number of pages given to the buddy allocator

255 `idx` is the last index that is addressable by this node

256-263 Cycle through all pages addressable by this node

257 If the page is marked free then...

258 Increase the running count of pages given to the buddy allocator

259 Clear the `PG_reserved` flag

260 Set the count to 1 so that the buddy allocator will think this is the last user of the page and place it in its free lists

261 Call the buddy allocator free function

264 `total` will come the total number of pages given over by this function

```

270     page = virt_to_page(bdata->node_bootmem_map);
271     count = 0;
272     for (i = 0; i < ((bdata->node_low_pfn-(bdata->node_boot_start >>
PAGE_SHIFT))/8 + PAGE_SIZE-1)/PAGE_SIZE; i++,page++) {
273         count++;
274         ClearPageReserved(page);
275         set_page_count(page, 1);
276         __free_page(page);
277     }
278     total += count;
279     bdata->node_bootmem_map = NULL;
280
281     return total;
282 }
```

Free the allocator bitmap and return

270 Get the struct page that is at the beginning of the bootmem map

271 Count of pages freed by the bitmap

272-277 For all pages used by the bitmap, free them to the buddy allocator the same way the previous block of code did

279 Set the bootmem map to `NULL` to prevent it been freed a second time by accident

281 Return the total number of pages freed by this function

## Chapter 2

# Physical Page Management

<pre>alloc_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask, unsigned int order)     Allocate <math>2^{order}</math> number of pages and returns a struct page  __get_dma_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask, unsigned int order)     Allocate <math>2^{order}</math> number of pages from the DMA zone and return a     struct page  __get_free_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask, unsigned int order)     Allocate <math>2^{order}</math> number of pages and return a virtual address  alloc_page(unsigned int gfp_mask)     Allocate a single page and return a struct address  __get_free_page(unsigned int gfp_mask)     Allocate a single page and return a virtual address  get_free_page(unsigned int gfp_mask)     Allocate a single page, zero it and return a virtual address</pre>
---

Table 2.1: Physical Pages Allocation API

## 2.1 Allocating Pages

**Function:** `alloc_pages` (*include/linux/mm.h*)

The toplevel `alloc_pages()` function is declared as

```
428 static inline struct page * alloc_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask,
429                                         unsigned int order)
429 {
```

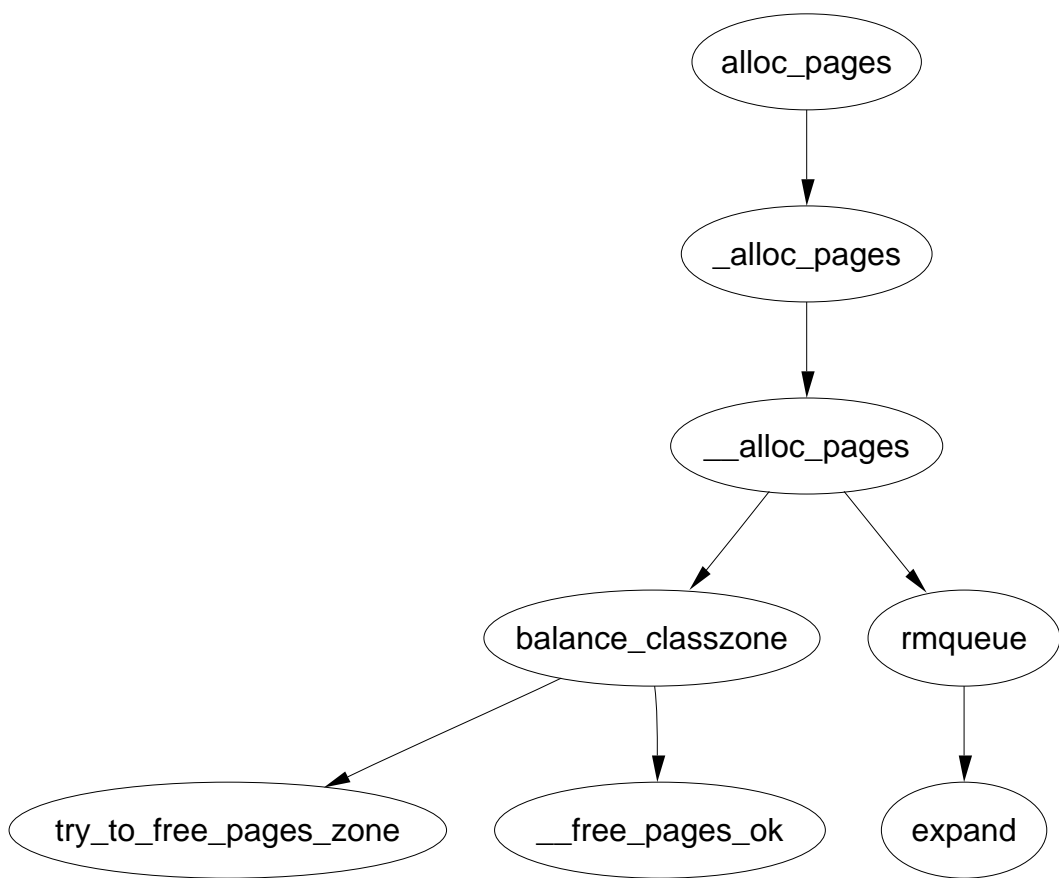


Figure 2.1: `alloc_pages` Call Graph

```

433         if (order >= MAX_ORDER)
434             return NULL;
435         return _alloc_pages(gfp_mask, order);
436     }

```

428 The `gfp_mask` (Get Free Pages) flags tells the allocator how it may behave. For example `GFP_WAIT` is not set, the allocator will not block and instead return `NULL` if memory is tight. The order is the power of two number of pages to allocate

433-434 A simple debugging check optimized away at compile time

435 This function is described next

**Function:** `_alloc_pages` (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

The function `_alloc_pages()` comes in two varieties. The first in `mm/page_alloc.c` is designed to only work with UMA architectures such as the x86. It only refers to the static node `contig_page_data`. The second in `mm/numa.c` and is a simple extension. It uses a node-local allocation policy which means that memory will be allocated from the bank closest to the processor. For the purposes of this document, only the `mm/page_alloc.c` version will be examined but for completeness the reader should glance at the functions `_alloc_pages()` and `_alloc_pages_pgdat()` in `mm/numa.c`

```

244 #ifndef CONFIG_DISCONTIGMEM
245 struct page *_alloc_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask, unsigned int order)
246 {
247     return __alloc_pages(gfp_mask, order,
248                         contig_page_data.node_zonelist+(gfp_mask & GFP_ZONEMASK));
249 }
250 #endif

```

244 The `ifndef` is for UMA architectures like the x86. NUMA architectures used the `_alloc_pages()` function in `mm/numa.c` which employs a node local policy for allocations

245 The `gfp_mask` flags tell the allocator how it may behave. The order is the power of two number of pages to allocate

247 `node_zonelist` is an array of preferred fallback zones to allocate from. It is initialised in `build_zonelist()` The lower 16 bits of `gfp_mask` indicate what zone is preferable to allocate from. `gfp_mask & GFP_ZONEMASK` will give the index in `node_zonelist` we prefer to allocate from.

**Function:** `__alloc_pages` (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

At this stage, we've reached what is described as the "heart of the zoned buddy allocator", the `__alloc_pages()` function. It is responsible for cycling through the fallback zones and selecting one suitable for the allocation. If memory is tight, it will take some steps to address the problem. It will wake **kswapd** and if necessary it will do the work of **kswapd** manually.

```

327 struct page * __alloc_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask, unsigned int order,
zonest_t *zonest)
328 {
329     unsigned long min;
330     zone_t **zone, * classzone;
331     struct page * page;
332     int freed;
333
334     zone = zonest->zonest;
335     classzone = *zone;
336     if (classzone == NULL)
337         return NULL;
338     min = 1UL << order;
339     for (;;) {
340         zone_t *z = *(zone++);
341         if (!z)
342             break;
343
344         min += z->pages_low;
345         if (z->free_pages > min) {
346             page = rmqueue(z, order);
347             if (page)
348                 return page;
349         }
350     }
351
352     classzone->need_balance = 1;
353     mb();
354     if (waitqueue_active(&kswapd_wait))
355         wake_up_interruptible(&kswapd_wait);
356
357     zone = zonest->zonest;
358     min = 1UL << order;
359     for (;;) {
360         unsigned long local_min;
361         zone_t *z = *(zone++);
362         if (!z)
363             break;

```

```
364
365     local_min = z->pages_min;
366     if (!(gfp_mask & __GFP_WAIT))
367         local_min >>= 2;
368     min += local_min;
369     if (z->free_pages > min) {
370         page = rmqueue(z, order);
371         if (page)
372             return page;
373     }
374 }
375
376     /* here we're in the low on memory slow path */
377
378     rebalance:
379     if (current->flags & (PF_MEMALLOC | PF_MEMDIE)) {
380         zone = zonelist->zones;
381         for (;;) {
382             zone_t *z = *(zone++);
383             if (!z)
384                 break;
385
386             page = rmqueue(z, order);
387             if (page)
388                 return page;
389         }
390         return NULL;
391     }
392
393     /* Atomic allocations - we can't balance anything */
394     if (!(gfp_mask & __GFP_WAIT))
395         return NULL;
396
397     page = balance_classzone(classzone, gfp_mask, order, &freed);
398     if (page)
399         return page;
400
401     zone = zonelist->zones;
402     min = 1UL << order;
403     for (;;) {
404         zone_t *z = *(zone++);
405         if (!z)
406             break;
407
408         min += z->pages_min;
```

```

409         if (z->free_pages > min) {
410             page = rmqueue(z, order);
411             if (page)
412                 return page;
413         }
414     }
415
416     /* Don't let big-order allocations loop */
417     if (order > 3)
418         return NULL;
419
420     /* Yield for kswapd, and try again */
421     yield();
422     goto rebalance;
423 }

```

334 Set zone to be the preferred zone to allocate from

335 The preferred zone is recorded as the classzone. If one of the pages low watermarks is reached later, the classzone is marked as needing balance

336-337 An unnecessary sanity check. `build_zonelists()` would need to be seriously broken for this to happen

338-350 This style of block appears a number of times in this function. It reads as "cycle through all zones in this fallback list and see can the allocation be satisfied without violating watermarks. Note that the `pages_low` for each fallback zone is added together. This is deliberate to reduce the probability a fallback zone will be used.

340 `z` is the zone currently been examined. `zone` is moved to the next fallback zone

341-342 If this is the last zone in the fallback list, break

344 Increment the number of pages to be allocated by the watermark for easy comparisons. This happens for each zone in the fallback zones. While it would appear to be a bug, it is assumed that this behavior is intended to reduce the probability a fallback zone is used.

345-349 Allocate the page block if it can be assigned without reaching the `pages_min` watermark. `rmqueue()` is responsible from removing the block of pages from the zone

347-348 If the pages could be allocated, return a pointer to them

352 Mark the preferred zone as needing balance. This flag will be read later by **kswapd**

- 353 This is a memory barrier. It ensures that all CPU's will see any changes made to variables before this line of code. This is important because kswapd could be running on a different processor to the memory allocator.
- 354-355 Wake up kswapd if it is asleep
- 357-358 Begin again with the first preferred zone and min value
- 360-374 Cycle through all the zones. This time, allocate the pages if they can be allocated without hitting the `pages_min` watermark
- 365 `local_min` how low a number of free pages this zone can have
- 366-367 If the process can not wait or reschedule (`__GFP_WAIT` is clear), then allow the zone to be put in further memory pressure than the watermark normally allows
- 378 This label is returned to after an attempt is made to synchronously free pages. From this line on, the low on memory path has been reached. It is likely the process will sleep
- 379-391 These two flags are only set by the OOM killer. As the process is trying to kill itself cleanly, allocate the pages if at all possible as it is known they will be freed very soon
- 394-395 If the calling process can not sleep, return NULL as the only way to allocate the pages from here involves sleeping
- 397 This function does the work of kswapd in a synchronous fashion. The principle difference is that instead of freeing the memory into a global pool, it is kept for the process using the `current→local_pages` field
- 398-399 If a page block of the right order has been freed, return it. Just because this is NULL does not mean an allocation will fail as it could be a higher order of pages that was released
- 403-414 This is identical to the block above. Allocate the page blocks if it can be done without hitting the `pages_min` watermark
- 417-418 Satisfying a large allocation like  $2^4$  number of pages is difficult. If it has not been satisfied by now, it is better to simply return NULL
- 421 Yield the processor to give kswapd a chance to work
- 422 Attempt to balance the zones again and allocate



**Function: rmqueue** (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

This function is called from `__alloc_pages()`. It is responsible for finding a block of memory large enough to be used for the allocation. If a block of memory of the requested size is not available, it will look for a larger order that may be split into two buddies. The actual splitting is performed by the `expand()` function.

```

198 static FASTCALL(struct page * rmqueue(zone_t *zone, unsigned int order));
199 static struct page * rmqueue(zone_t *zone, unsigned int order)
200 {
201     free_area_t * area = zone->free_area + order;
202     unsigned int curr_order = order;
203     struct list_head *head, *curr;
204     unsigned long flags;
205     struct page *page;
206
207     spin_lock_irqsave(&zone->lock, flags);
208     do {
209         head = &area->free_list;
210         curr = head->next;
211
212         if (curr != head) {
213             unsigned int index;
214
215             page = list_entry(curr, struct page, list);
216             if (BAD_RANGE(zone, page))
217                 BUG();
218             list_del(curr);
219             index = page - zone->zone_mem_map;
220             if (curr_order != MAX_ORDER-1)
221                 MARK_USED(index, curr_order, area);
222             zone->free_pages -= 1UL << order;
223
224             page = expand(zone, page, index, order,
curr_order, area);
225             spin_unlock_irqrestore(&zone->lock, flags);
226
227             set_page_count(page, 1);
228             if (BAD_RANGE(zone, page))
229                 BUG();
230             if (PageLRU(page))
231                 BUG();
232             if (PageActive(page))
233                 BUG();
234             return page;
235         }

```

```

236             curr_order++;
237             area++;
238         } while (curr_order < MAX_ORDER);
239         spin_unlock_irqrestore(&zone->lock, flags);
240
241         return NULL;
242     }

```

199 The parameters are the zone to allocate from and what order of pages are required

201 Because the `free_area` is an array of linked lists, the order may be used as an index within the array

207 Acquire the zone lock

208-238 This while block is responsible for finding what order of pages we will need to allocate from. If there isn't a free block at the order we are interested in, check the higher blocks until a suitable one is found

209 `head` is the list of free page blocks for this order

210 `curr` is the first block of pages

212-235 If there is a free page block at this order, then allocate it

215 `page` is set to be a pointer to the first page in the free block

216-217 Sanity check that checks to make sure the page this page belongs to this zone and is within the `zone_mem_map`. It is unclear how this could possibly happen without severe bugs in the allocator itself that would place blocks in the wrong zones

218 As the block is going to be allocated, remove it from the free list

219 `index` treats the `zone_mem_map` as an array of pages so that `index` will be the offset within the array

220-221 Toggle the bit that represents this pair of buddies. `MARK_USED()` is a macro which calculates which bit to toggle

222 Update the statistics for this zone. `1UL << order` is the number of pages been allocated

224 `expand()` is the function responsible for splitting page blocks of higher orders

225 No other updates to the zone need to take place so release the lock

227 Show that the page is in use

228-233 Sanity checks

234 Page block has been successfully allocated so return it

236-237 If a page block was not free of the correct order, move to a higher order of page blocks and see what can be found there

239 No other updates to the zone need to take place so release the lock

241 No page blocks of the requested or higher order are available so return failure

**Function: expand** (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

This function splits page blocks of higher orders until a page block of the needed order is available.

```

177 static inline struct page * expand (zone_t *zone,
                                     struct page *page,
                                     unsigned long index,
                                     int low,
                                     int high,
                                     free_area_t * area)
179 {
180     unsigned long size = 1 << high;
181
182     while (high > low) {
183         if (BAD_RANGE(zone,page))
184             BUG();
185         area--;
186         high--;
187         size >>= 1;
188         list_add(&(page)->list, &(area)->free_list);
189         MARK_USED(index, high, area);
190         index += size;
191         page += size;
192     }
193     if (BAD_RANGE(zone,page))
194         BUG();
195     return page;
196 }

```

177 Parameter zone is where the allocation is coming from

177 page is the first page of the block been split

177 index is the index of page within mem\_map

177 low is the order of pages needed for the allocation

177 high is the order of pages that is been split for the allocation

177 area is the `free_area_t` representing the high order block of pages

180 size is the number of pages in the block that is to be split

182-192 Keep splitting until a block of the needed page order is found

183-184 Sanity check that checks to make sure the page this page belongs to this zone and is within the `zone_mem_map`

185 area is now the next `free_area_t` representing the lower order of page blocks

186 high is the next order of page blocks to be split

187 The size of the block been split is now half as big

188 Of the pair of buddies, the one lower in the `mem_map` is added to the free list for the lower order

189 Toggle the bit representing the pair of buddies

190 index now the index of the second buddy of the newly created pair

191 page now points to the second buddy of the newly created pair

193-194 Sanity check

195 The blocks have been successfully split so return the page

## 2.2 Free Pages

<pre> __free_pages(struct page *page, unsigned int order)     Free an order number of pages from the given page  __free_page(struct page *page)     Free a single page  free_page(void *addr)     Free a page from the given virtual address </pre>
---

Table 2.2: Physical Pages Free API

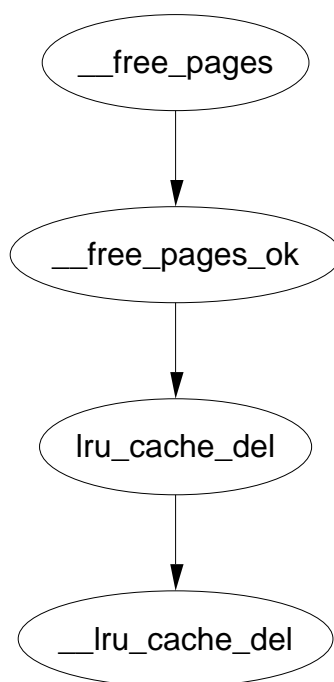


Figure 2.2: \_\_free\_pages Call Graph

**Function:** `__free_pages` (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

Confusingly, the opposite to `alloc_pages()` is not `free_pages()`, it is `__free_pages()`. `free_pages()` is a helper function which takes an address as a parameter, it will be discussed in a later section.

```

451 void __free_pages(struct page *page, unsigned int order)
452 {
453     if (!PageReserved(page) && put_page_testzero(page))
454         __free_pages_ok(page, order);
455 }
  
```

451 The parameters are the `page` we wish to free and what order block it is

453 Sanity checked. `PageReserved` indicates that the page is reserved. This usually indicates it is in use by the bootmem allocator which the buddy allocator should not be touching. `put_page_testzero()` decrements the usage count and makes sure it is zero

454 Call the function that does all the hard work

**Function:** `__free_pages_ok` (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

This function will do the actual freeing of the page and coalesce the buddies if possible.

```
81 static void FASTCALL(__free_pages_ok (struct page *page,
                                     unsigned int order));
82 static void __free_pages_ok (struct page *page, unsigned int order)
83 {
84     unsigned long index, page_idx, mask, flags;
85     free_area_t *area;
86     struct page *base;
87     zone_t *zone;
88
89     if (PageLRU(page)) {
90         if (unlikely(in_interrupt()))
91             BUG();
92         lru_cache_del(page);
93     }
94
95     if (page->buffers)
96         BUG();
97     if (page->mapping)
98         BUG();
99     if (!VALID_PAGE(page))
100         BUG();
101     if (PageLocked(page))
102         BUG();
103     if (PageActive(page))
104         BUG();
105     page->flags &= ~(1<<PG_referenced) | (1<<PG_dirty);
106
107     if (current->flags & PF_FREE_PAGES)
108         goto local_freelist;
109 back_local_freelist:
110
111     zone = page_zone(page);
112
113     mask = (~0UL) << order;
114     base = zone->zone_mem_map;
115     page_idx = page - base;
116     if (page_idx & ~mask)
117         BUG();
118     index = page_idx >> (1 + order);
119
120     area = zone->free_area + order;
121
122     spin_lock_irqsave(&zone->lock, flags);
123
124     zone->free_pages -= mask;
```

```
129
130     while (mask + (1 << (MAX_ORDER-1))) {
131         struct page *buddy1, *buddy2;
132
133         if (area >= zone->free_area + MAX_ORDER)
134             BUG();
135         if (!__test_and_change_bit(index, area->map))
136             /*
137              * the buddy page is still allocated.
138              */
139             break;
140         /*
141          * Move the buddy up one level.
142          * This code is taking advantage of the identity:
143          *     -mask = 1+~mask
144          */
145         buddy1 = base + (page_idx ^ -mask);
146         buddy2 = base + page_idx;
147         if (BAD_RANGE(zone,buddy1))
148             BUG();
149         if (BAD_RANGE(zone,buddy2))
150             BUG();
151
152         list_del(&buddy1->list);
153         mask <<= 1;
154         area++;
155         index >>= 1;
156         page_idx &= mask;
157     }
158     list_add(&(base + page_idx)->list, &area->free_list);
159
160     spin_unlock_irqrestore(&zone->lock, flags);
161     return;
162
163 local_freelist:
164     if (current->nr_local_pages)
165         goto back_local_freelist;
166     if (in_interrupt())
167         goto back_local_freelist;
168
169     list_add(&page->list, &current->local_pages);
170     page->index = order;
171     current->nr_local_pages++;
172 }
```

- 82 The parameters are the beginning of the page block to free and what order number of pages are to be freed.
- 32 A dirty page on the LRU will still have the LRU bit set when pinned for IO. It is just freed directly when the IO is complete so it just has to be removed from the LRU list
- 99-108 Sanity checks
- 109 The flags showing a page has being referenced and is dirty have to be cleared because the page is now free and not in use
- 111-112 If this flag is set, the pages freed are to be kept for the process doing the freeing. This is set during page allocation if the caller is freeing the pages itself rather than waiting for kswapd to do the work
- 115 The zone the page belongs to is encoded within the page flags. The `page_zone` macro returns the zone
- 117 The calculation of mask is discussed in companion document. It is basically related to the address calculation of the buddy
- 118 `base` is the beginning of this `zone_mem_map`. For the buddy calculation to work, it was to be relative to an address 0 so that the addresses will be a power of two
- 119 `page_idx` treats the `zone_mem_map` as an array of pages. This is the index page within the map
- 120-121 If the index is not the proper power of two, things are severely broken and calculation of the buddy will not work
- 122 This `index` is the bit index within `free_area→map`
- 124 `area` is the area storing the free lists and map for the order block the pages are been freed from.
- 126 The zone is about to be altered so take out the lock
- 128 Another side effect of the calculation of mask is that `-mask` is the number of pages that are to be freed
- 130-157 The allocator will keep trying to coalesce blocks together until it either cannot merge or reaches the highest order that can be merged. `mask` will be adjusted for each order block that is merged. When the highest order that can be merged is reached, this while loop will evaluate to 0 and exit.
- 133-134 If by some miracle, `mask` is corrupt, this check will make sure the `free_area` array will not not be read beyond the end



- 135 Toggle the bit representing this pair of buddies. If the bit was previously zero, both buddies were in use. As this buddy is been freed, one is still in use and cannot be merged
- 145-146 The calculation of the two addresses is discussed in the companion document
- 147-150 Sanity check to make sure the pages are within the correct `markvar-zone_mem_map` and actually belong to this zone
- 152 The buddy has been freed so remove it from any list it was part of
- 153-156 Prepare to examine the higher order buddy for merging
- 153 Move the mask one bit to the left for order  $2^{k+1}$
- 154 `area` is a pointer within an array so `area++` moves to the next index
- 155 The index in the bitmap of the higher order
- 156 The page index within the `zone_mem_map` for the buddy to merge
- 158 As much merging as possible as completed and a new page block is free so add it to the `free_list` for this order
- 160-161 Changes to the zone is complete so free the lock and return
- 163 This is the code path taken when the pages are not freed to the main pool but instead are reserved for the process doing the freeing.
- 164-165 If the process already has reserved pages, it is not allowed to reserve any more so return back
- 166-167 An interrupt does not have process context so it has to free in the normal fashion. It is unclear how an interrupt could end up here at all. This check is likely to be bogus and impossible to be true
- 169 Add the page block to the list for the processes `local_pages`
- 170 Record what order allocation it was for freeing later
- 171 Increase the use count for `nr_local_pages`

## 2.3 Page Allocate Helper Functions

This section will cover miscellaneous helper functions and macros the Buddy Allocator uses to allocate pages. Very few of them do "real" work and are available just for the convenience of the programmer.

**Function: alloc\_page** (*include/linux/mm.h*)

This trivial macro just calls `alloc_pages()` with an order of 0 to return 1 page. It is declared as follows

```
438 #define alloc_page(gfp_mask) alloc_pages(gfp_mask, 0)
```

**Function: \_\_get\_free\_page** (*include/linux/mm.h*)

This trivial function calls `__get_free_pages()` with an order of 0 to return 1 page. It is declared as follows

```
443 #define __get_free_page(gfp_mask) \
444     __get_free_pages((gfp_mask), 0)
```

**Function: \_\_get\_free\_pages** (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

This function is for callers who do not want to worry about pages and only get back an address it can use. It is declared as follows

```
428 unsigned long __get_free_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask,
                                unsigned int order)
428 {
430     struct page * page;
431
432     page = alloc_pages(gfp_mask, order);
433     if (!page)
434         return 0;
435     return (unsigned long) page_address(page);
436 }
```

428 `gfp_mask` are the flags which affect allocator behaviour. Order is the power of 2 number of pages required.

431 `alloc_pages()` does the work of allocating the page block. See Section 2.1

433-434 Make sure the page is valid

435 `page_address()` returns the physical address of the page

**Function: \_\_get\_dma\_pages** (*include/linux/mm.h*)

This is of principle interest to device drivers. It will return memory from `ZONE_DMA` suitable for use with DMA devices. It is declared as follows

```
446 #define __get_dma_pages(gfp_mask, order) \
447     __get_free_pages((gfp_mask) | GFP_DMA, (order))
```

447 The `gfp_mask` is or-ed with `GFP_DMA` to tell the allocator to allocate from `ZONE_DMA`

**Function: `get_zeroed_page`** (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

This function will allocate one page and then zero out the contents of it. It is declared as follows

```

438 unsigned long get_zeroed_page(unsigned int gfp_mask)
439 {
440     struct page * page;
441
442     page = alloc_pages(gfp_mask, 0);
443     if (page) {
444         void *address = page_address(page);
445         clear_page(address);
446         return (unsigned long) address;
447     }
448     return 0;
449 }
```

438 `gfp_mask` are the flags which affect allocator behaviour.

442 `alloc_pages()` does the work of allocating the page block. See Section 2.1

444 `page_address()` returns the physical address of the page

445 `clear_page()` will fill the contents of a page with zero

446 Return the address of the zeroed page

## 2.4 Page Free Helper Functions

This section will cover miscellaneous helper functions and macros the Buddy Allocator uses to free pages. Very few of them do "real" work and are available just for the convenience of the programmer. There is only one core function for the freeing of pages and it is discussed in Section 2.2.

The only functions then for freeing are ones that supply an address and for freeing a single page.

**Function: `free_pages`** (*mm/page\_alloc.c*)

This function takes an address instead of a page as a parameter to free. It is declared as follows

```

457 void free_pages(unsigned long addr, unsigned int order)
458 {
459     if (addr != 0)
460         __free_pages(virt_to_page(addr), order);
461 }
```

460 The function is discussed in Section 2.2. The macro `virt_to_page()` returns the `struct page` for the `addr`

**Function:** `__free_page` (*include/linux/mm.h*)

This trivial macro just calls the function `__free_pages()` (See Section 2.2 with an order 0 for 1 page. It is declared as follows

```
460 #define __free_page(page) __free_pages((page), 0)
```

# Chapter 3

## Non-Contiguous Memory Allocation

### 3.1 Allocating A Non-Contiguous Area

<p><code>vmalloc(unsigned long size)</code> Allocate a number of pages in vmalloc space that satisfy the requested size</p> <p><code>vmalloc_dma(unsigned long size)</code> Allocate a number of pages from ZONE_DMA</p> <p><code>vmalloc_32(unsigned long size)</code> Allocate memory that is suitable for 32 bit addressing. This ensures it is in ZONE_NORMAL at least which some PCI devices require</p>
---

Table 3.1: Non-Contiguous Memory Allocation API

**Function:** `vmalloc` (*include/linux/vmalloc.h*)

They only difference between these macros is the GFP\_ flags (See the companion document for an explanation of GFP flags). The size parameter is page aligned by `__vmalloc()`

```
33 static inline void * vmalloc (unsigned long size)
34 {
35     return __vmalloc(size, GFP_KERNEL | __GFP_HIGHMEM, PAGE_KERNEL);
36 }
37
41
42 static inline void * vmalloc_dma (unsigned long size)
43 {
44     return __vmalloc(size, GFP_KERNEL|GFP_DMA, PAGE_KERNEL);
```

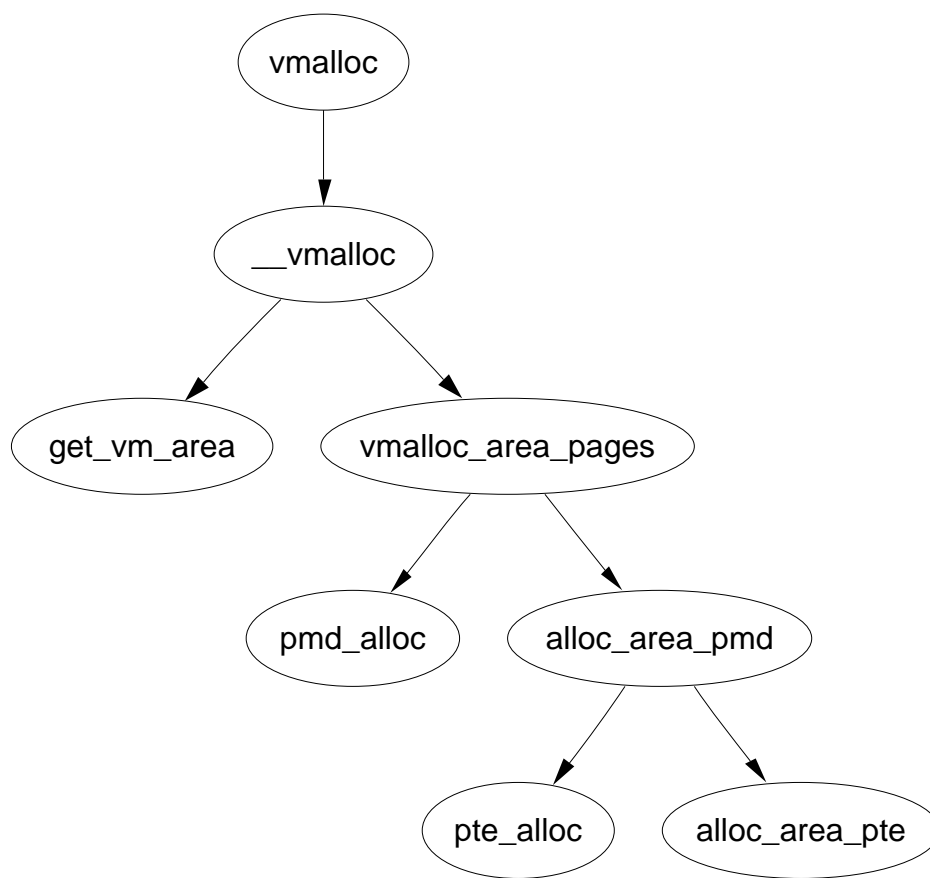


Figure 3.1: vmalloc

```

45 }
46
50
51 static inline void * vmalloc_32(unsigned long size)
52 {
53     return __vmalloc(size, GFP_KERNEL, PAGE_KERNEL);
54 }

```

33 The flags indicate that to use either ZONE\_NORMAL or ZONE\_HIGHMEM as necessary

42 The flag indicates to only allocate from ZONE\_DMA

51 Only physical pages from ZONE\_NORMAL will be allocated

**Function:** `__vmalloc` (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This function has three tasks. It page aligns the size request, asks `get_vm_area()` to find an area for the request and uses `vmalloc_area_pages()` to allocate the PTE's for the pages.

```

231 void * __vmalloc (unsigned long size, int gfp_mask, pgprot_t prot)
232 {
233     void * addr;
234     struct vm_struct *area;
235
236     size = PAGE_ALIGN(size);
237     if (!size || (size >> PAGE_SHIFT) > num_physpages) {
238         BUG();
239         return NULL;
240     }
241     area = get_vm_area(size, VM_ALLOC);
242     if (!area)
243         return NULL;
244     addr = area->addr;
245     if (vmalloc_area_pages(VMALLOC_VMADDR(addr), size, gfp_mask, prot))
246         vfree(addr);
247     return NULL;
248 }
249
250 return addr;
251 }

```

231 The parameters are the size to allocate, the GFP\_ flags to use for allocation and what protection to give the PTE

236 Align the size to a page size

- 237 Sanity check. Make sure the size is not 0 and that the size requested is not larger than the number of physical pages has been requested
- 241 Find an area of virtual address space to store the allocation (See Section 3.1)
- 245 The `addr` field has been filled by `get_vm_area()`
- 246 Allocate the PTE entries needed for the allocation with `vmalloc_area_pages()`. If it fails, a non-zero value `-ENOMEM` is returned
- 247-248 If the allocation fails, free any PTE's, pages and descriptions of the area
- 250 Return the address of the allocated area

**Function:** `get_vm_area` (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

To allocate an area for the `vm_struct`, the slab allocator is asked to provide the necessary memory via `kmalloc()`. It then searches the `vm_struct` list linearly looking for a region large enough to satisfy a request, including a page pad at the end of the area.

```

171 struct vm_struct * get_vm_area(unsigned long size, unsigned long flags)
172 {
173     unsigned long addr;
174     struct vm_struct **p, *tmp, *area;
175
176     area = (struct vm_struct *) kmalloc(sizeof(*area), GFP_KERNEL);
177     if (!area)
178         return NULL;
179     size += PAGE_SIZE;
180     if(!size)
181         return NULL;
182     addr = VMALLOC_START;
183     write_lock(&vmlist_lock);
184     for (p = &vmlist; (tmp = *p) ; p = &tmp->next) {
185         if ((size + addr) < addr)
186             goto out;
187         if (size + addr <= (unsigned long) tmp->addr)
188             break;
189         addr = tmp->size + (unsigned long) tmp->addr;
190         if (addr > VMALLOC_END-size)
191             goto out;
192     }
193     area->flags = flags;
194     area->addr = (void *)addr;
195     area->size = size;
196     area->next = *p;
197     *p = area;

```



```
198     write_unlock(&vmlist_lock);
199     return area;
200
201 out:
202     write_unlock(&vmlist_lock);
203     kfree(area);
204     return NULL;
205 }
```

171 The parameters is the size of the requested region which should be a multiple of the page size and the area flags, either VM\_ALLOC or VM\_IOREMAP

176-178 Allocate space for the `vm_struct` description struct

179 Pad the request so there is a page gap between areas. This is to help against overwrites

180-181 This is to ensure the size is not 0 after the padding

182 Start the search at the beginning of the `vmalloc` address space

183 Lock the list

184-192 Walk through the list searching for an area large enough for the request

185-186 Check to make sure the end of the addressable range has not been reached

187-188 If the requested area would fit between the current address and the next area, the search is complete

189 Make sure the address would not go over the end of the `vmalloc` address space

193-195 Copy in the area information

196-197 Link the new area into the list

198-199 Unlock the list and return

201 This label is reached if the request could not be satisfied

202 Unlock the list

203-204 Free the memory used for the area descriptor and return

**Function: `vmalloc_area_pages`** (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the beginning of a standard page table walk function. This top level function will step through all PGD's within an address range. For each PGD, it will call `pmd_alloc()` to allocate a PMD directory and call `alloc_area_pmd()` for the directory.

```

140 inline int vmalloc_area_pages (unsigned long address, unsigned long size,
141                               int gfp_mask, pgprot_t prot)
142 {
143     pgd_t * dir;
144     unsigned long end = address + size;
145     int ret;
146
147     dir = pgd_offset_k(address);
148     spin_lock(&init_mm.page_table_lock);
149     do {
150         pmd_t *pmd;
151
152         pmd = pmd_alloc(&init_mm, dir, address);
153         ret = -ENOMEM;
154         if (!pmd)
155             break;
156
157         ret = -ENOMEM;
158         if (alloc_area_pmd(pmd, address, end - address, gfp_mask, pr
159             break;
160
161         address = (address + PGDIR_SIZE) & PGDIR_MASK;
162         dir++;
163
164         ret = 0;
165     } while (address && (address < end));
166     spin_unlock(&init_mm.page_table_lock);
167     flush_cache_all();
168     return ret;
169 }
```

140 `address` is the starting address to allocate pmd's for. `size` is the size of the region, `gfp_mask` is the GFP\_ flags for `alloc_pages()` and `prot` is the protection to give the PTE entry

144 The end address is the starting address plus the size

147 Get the PGD entry for the starting address

148 Lock the kernel page table

149-165 For every PGD within this address range, allocate a PMD directory and call `alloc_area_pmd()`

152 Allocate a PMD directory

158 Call `alloc_area_pmd()` which will allocate a PTE for each PTE slot in the PMD

161 address becomes the base address of the next PGD entry

162 Move `dir` to the next PGD entry

166 Release the lock to the kernel page table

167 `flush_cache_all()` will flush all CPU caches. This is necessary because the kernel page tables have changed

168 Return success

**Function: `alloc_area_pmd`** (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the second stage of the standard page table walk to allocate PTE entries for an address range. For every PMD within a given address range on a PGD, `pte_alloc()` will create a PTE directory and then `alloc_area_pte()` will be called to allocate the physical pages

```

120 static inline int alloc_area_pmd(pmd_t * pmd, unsigned long address,
unsigned long size, int gfp_mask, pgprot_t prot)
121 {
122     unsigned long end;
123
124     address &= ~PGDIR_MASK;
125     end = address + size;
126     if (end > PGDIR_SIZE)
127         end = PGDIR_SIZE;
128     do {
129         pte_t * pte = pte_alloc(&init_mm, pmd, address);
130         if (!pte)
131             return -ENOMEM;
132         if (alloc_area_pte(pte, address, end - address, gfp_mask, pr
133             return -ENOMEM;
134         address = (address + PMD_SIZE) & PMD_MASK;
135         pmd++;
136     } while (address < end);
137     return 0;
138 }

```

120 `address` is the starting address to allocate pmd's for. `size` is the size of the region, `gfp_mask` is the GFP\_ flags for `alloc_pages()` and `prot` is the protection to give the PTE entry

- 124 Align the starting address to the PGD
- 125-127 Calculate end to be the end of the allocation or the end of the PGD, whichever occurs first
- 128-136 For every PMD within the given address range, allocate a PTE directory and call `alloc_area_pte()`
- 129 Allocate the PTE directory
- 132 Call `alloc_area_pte()` which will allocate the physical pages
- 134 address becomes the base address of the next PMD entry
- 135 Move pmd to the next PMD entry
- 137 Return success

**Function: `alloc_area_pte`** (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the last stage of the page table walk. For every PTE in the given PTE directory and address range, a page will be allocated and associated with the PTE.

```

95 static inline int alloc_area_pte (pte_t * pte, unsigned long address,
96                                 unsigned long size, int gfp_mask, pgprot_t prot)
97 {
98     unsigned long end;
99
100    address &= ~PMD_MASK;
101    end = address + size;
102    if (end > PMD_SIZE)
103        end = PMD_SIZE;
104    do {
105        struct page * page;
106        spin_unlock(&init_mm.page_table_lock);
107        page = alloc_page(gfp_mask);
108        spin_lock(&init_mm.page_table_lock);
109        if (!pte_none(*pte))
110            printk(KERN_ERR "alloc_area_pte: page already
exists\n");
111        if (!page)
112            return -ENOMEM;
113        set_pte(pte, mk_pte(page, prot));
114        address += PAGE_SIZE;
115        pte++;
116    } while (address < end);
117    return 0;
118 }
```

- 100 Align the address to a PMD directory
- 101-103 The end address is the end of the request or the end of the directory, whichever occurs first
- 104-116 For every PTE in the range, allocate a physical page and set it to the PTE
- 106 Unlock the kernel page table before calling `alloc_page()`. `alloc_page()` may sleep and a spinlock must not be held
- 108 Re-acquire the page table lock
- 109-110 If the page already exists it means that areas must be overlapping somehow
- 112-113 Return failure if physical pages are not available
- 113 Assign the struct page to the PTE
- 114 address becomes the address of the next PTE
- 115 Move to the next PTE
- 117 Return success

## 3.2 Freeing A Non-Contiguous Area

```

vfree(void *addr)
    Free a region of memory allocated with vmalloc, vmalloc_dma or
    vmalloc_32

```

Table 3.2: Non-Contiguous Memory Free API

### Function: `vfree` (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the top level function responsible for freeing a non-contiguous area of memory. It performs basic sanity checks before finding the `vm_struct` for the requested `addr`. Once found, it calls `vmfree_area_pages()`

```

207 void vfree(void * addr)
208 {
209     struct vm_struct **p, *tmp;
210
211     if (!addr)
212         return;
213     if ((PAGE_SIZE-1) & (unsigned long) addr) {

```

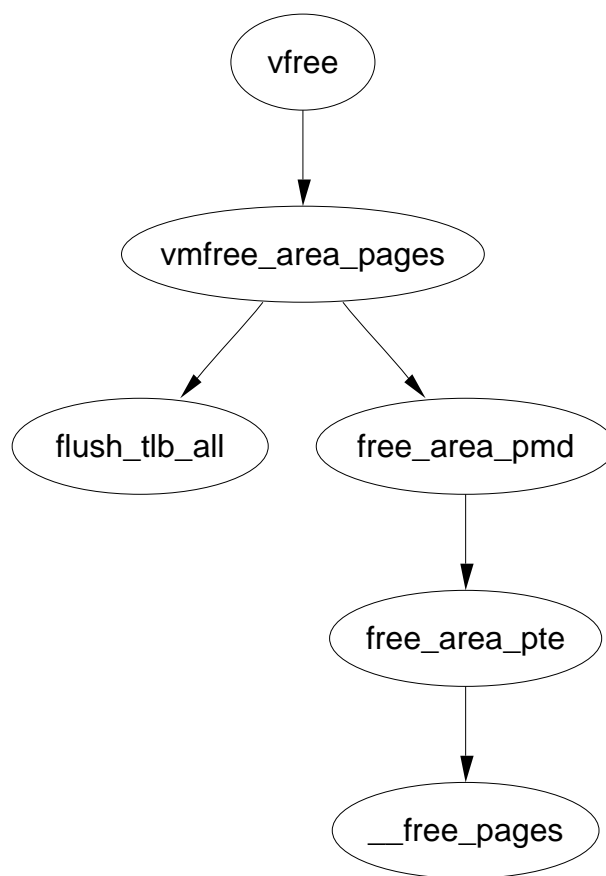


Figure 3.2: vfree

```

214             printk(KERN_ERR "Trying to vfree() bad address
                (%p)\n", addr);
215             return;
216         }
217         write_lock(&vmlist_lock);
218         for (p = &vmlist ; (tmp = *p) ; p = &tmp->next) {
219             if (tmp->addr == addr) {
220                 *p = tmp->next;
221                 vmfree_area_pages(VMALLOC_VMADDR(tmp->addr),
                tmp->size);
222                 write_unlock(&vmlist_lock);
223                 kfree(tmp);
224                 return;
225             }
226         }
227         write_unlock(&vmlist_lock);
228         printk(KERN_ERR "Trying to vfree() nonexistent vm area (%p)\n",
                addr);
229     }

```

207 The parameter is the address returned by `get_vm_area()` returns for ioremaps and `vmalloc` returns for allocations

211-213 Ignore NULL addresses

213-216 This checks the address is page aligned and is a reasonable quick guess to see if the area is valid or not

217 Acquire a write lock to the vmlist

218 Cycle through the vmlist looking for the correct `vm_struct` for `addr`

219 If this is the correct address then ...

220 Remove this area from the vmlist linked list

221 Free all pages associated with the address range

222 Release the vmlist lock

223 Free the memory used for the `vm_struct` and return

227-228 The `vm_struct()` was not found. Release the lock and print a message about the failed free

**Function: vmfree\_area\_pages** (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the first stage of the page table walk to free all pages and PTE's associated with an address range. It is responsible for stepping through the relevant PGD's and for flushing the TLB.

```

80 void vmfree_area_pages(unsigned long address, unsigned long size)
81 {
82     pgd_t * dir;
83     unsigned long end = address + size;
84
85     dir = pgd_offset_k(address);
86     flush_cache_all();
87     do {
88         free_area_pmd(dir, address, end - address);
89         address = (address + PGDIR_SIZE) & PGDIR_MASK;
90         dir++;
91     } while (address && (address < end));
92     flush_tlb_all();
93 }
```

80 The parameters are the starting address and the size of the region

82 The address space end is the starting address plus its size

85 Get the first PGD for the address range

86 Flush the cache CPU so cache hits will not occur on pages that are to be deleted.  
This is a null operation on many architectures including the x86

87 Call `free_area_pmd()` to perform the second stage of the page table walk

89 address becomes the starting address of the next PGD

90 Move to the next PGD

92 Flush the TLB as the page tables have now changed

**Function: free\_area\_pmd** (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the second stage of the page table walk. For every PMD in this directory, call `free_area_pte` to free up the pages and PTE's.

```

56 static inline void free_area_pmd(pgd_t * dir, unsigned long address,
unsigned long size)
57 {
58     pmd_t * pmd;
59     unsigned long end;
60
```



```

61     if (pgd_none(*dir))
62         return;
63     if (pgd_bad(*dir)) {
64         pgd_ERROR(*dir);
65         pgd_clear(dir);
66         return;
67     }
68     pmd = pmd_offset(dir, address);
69     address &= ~PGDIR_MASK;
70     end = address + size;
71     if (end > PGDIR_SIZE)
72         end = PGDIR_SIZE;
73     do {
74         free_area_pte(pmd, address, end - address);
75         address = (address + PMD_SIZE) & PMD_MASK;
76         pmd++;
77     } while (address < end);
78 }

```

56 The parameters are the PGD been stepped through, the starting address and the length of the region

61-62 If there is no PGD, return. This can occur after vfree is called during a failed allocation

63-67 A PGD can be bad if the entry is not present, it is marked read-only or it is marked accessed or dirty

68 Get the first PMD for the address range

69 Make the address PGD aligned

70-72 end is either the end of the space to free or the end of this PGD, whichever is first

73-77 For every PMD, call `free_area_pte()` to free the PTE entries

75 address is the base address of the next PMD

76 Move to the next PMD

**Function: `free_area_pte`** (*mm/vmalloc.c*)

This is the final stage of the page table walk. For every PTE in the given PMD within the address range, it will free the PTE and the associated page

```

22 static inline void free_area_pte(pmd_t * pmd, unsigned long address,
23 unsigned long size)
23 {

```

```

24     pte_t * pte;
25     unsigned long end;
26
27     if (pmd_none(*pmd))
28         return;
29     if (pmd_bad(*pmd)) {
30         pmd_ERROR(*pmd);
31         pmd_clear(pmd);
32         return;
33     }
34     pte = pte_offset(pmd, address);
35     address &= ~PMD_MASK;
36     end = address + size;
37     if (end > PMD_SIZE)
38         end = PMD_SIZE;
39     do {
40         pte_t page;
41         page = ptep_get_and_clear(pte);
42         address += PAGE_SIZE;
43         pte++;
44         if (pte_none(page))
45             continue;
46         if (pte_present(page)) {
47             struct page *ptpage = pte_page(page);
48             if (VALID_PAGE(ptpage) && (!PageReserved(ptpage)))
49                 __free_page(ptpage);
50             continue;
51         }
52         printk(KERN_CRIT "Whee.. Swapped out page in kernel page
table\n");
53     } while (address < end);
54 }

```

22 The parameters are the PMD that PTE's are been freed from, the starting address and the size of the region to free

27-28 The PMD could be absent if this region is from a failed vmalloc

29-33 A PMD can be bad if it's not in main memory, it's read only or it's marked dirty or accessed

34 pte is the first PTE in the address range

35 Align the address to the PMD

36-38 The end is either the end of the requested region or the end of the PMD, whichever occurs first

- 38-53 Step through all PTE's, perform checks and free the PTE with its associated page
- 41 `ptep_get_and_clear()` will remove a PTE from a page table and return it to the caller
- 42 address will be the base address of the next PTE
- 43 Move to the next PTE
- 44 If there was no PTE, simply continue
- 46-51 If the page is present, perform basic checks and then free it
- 47 `pte_page` uses the global `mem_map` to find the `struct page` for the PTE
- 48-49 Make sure the page is a valid page and it is not reserved before calling `__free_page()` to free the physical page
- 50 Continue to the next PTE
- 52 If this line is reached, a PTE within the kernel address space was somehow swapped out. Kernel memory is not swappable and so is a critical error

# Chapter 4

## Slab Allocator

### 4.0.1 Cache Creation

This section covers the creation of a cache. The tasks that are taken to create a cache are

- Perform basic sanity checks for bad usage
- Perform debugging checks if `CONFIG_SLAB_DEBUG` is set
- Allocate a `kmem_cache_t` from the `cache_cache` slab cache
- Align the object size to the word size
- Calculate how many objects will fit on a slab
- Align the slab size to the hardware cache
- Calculate colour offsets
- Initialise remaining fields in cache descriptor
- Add the new cache to the cache chain

See Figure 4.1 to see the call graph relevant to the creation of a cache. The depth of it is shallow as the depths will be discussed in other sections.

**Function: `kmem_cache_create`** (*mm/slab.c*)

Because of the size of this function, it will be dealt with in chunks. Each chunk is one of the items described in the previous section

```
621 kmem_cache_t *
622 kmem_cache_create (const char *name, size_t size,
623                  size_t offset, unsigned long flags,
624                  void (*ctor)(void*, kmem_cache_t *, unsigned long),
625                  void (*dtor)(void*, kmem_cache_t *, unsigned long))
```

<p><code>kmem_cache_create(const char *name, size_t size, size_t offset, unsigned long flags, void (*ctor)(void*, kmem_cache_t *, unsigned long), void (*dtor)(void*, kmem_cache_t *, unsigned long))</code>  Creates a new cache and adds it to the cache chain</p> <p><code>kmem_cache_reap(int gfp_mask)</code>  Scans at most <b>REAP_SCANLEN</b> caches and selects one for reaping all per-cpu objects and free slabs from. Called when memory is tight</p> <p><code>kmem_cache_shrink(kmem_cache_t *cachep)</code>  This function will delete all per-cpu objects associated with a cache and delete all slabs in the <code>slabs_free</code> list. It returns the number of pages freed.</p> <p><code>kmem_cache_alloc(kmem_cache_t *cachep, int flags)</code>  Allocate a single object from the cache and return it to the caller</p> <p><code>kmem_cache_free(kmem_cache_t *cachep, void *objp)</code>  Free an object and return it to the cache</p> <p><code>kmalloc(size_t size, int flags)</code>  Allocate a block of memory from one of the sizes cache</p> <p><code>kfree(const void *objp)</code>  Free a block of memory allocated with <code>kmalloc</code></p> <p><code>kmem_cache_destroy(kmem_cache_t * cachep)</code>  Destroys all objects in all slabs and frees up all associated memory before removing the cache from the chain</p>
---

Table 4.1: Slab Allocator API for caches

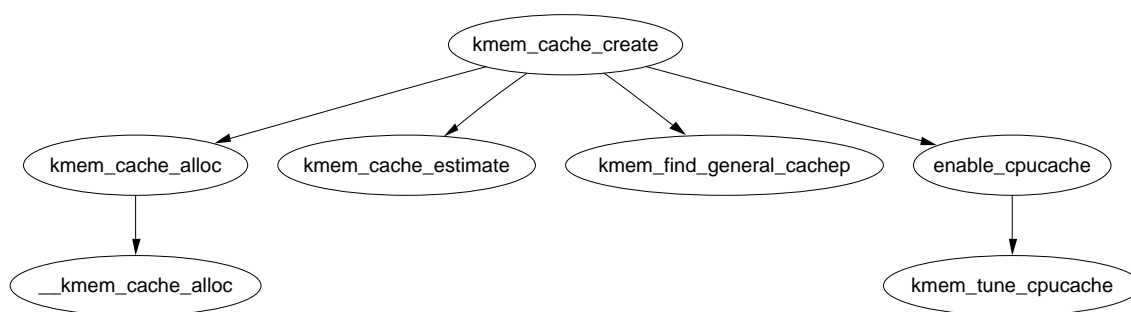


Figure 4.1: kmem\_cache\_create

```

625 {
626     const char *func_nm = KERN_ERR "kmem_create: ";
627     size_t left_over, align, slab_size;
628     kmem_cache_t *cachep = NULL;
629
630     if ((!name) ||
631         ((strlen(name) >= CACHE_NAMELEN - 1)) ||
632         in_interrupt() ||
633         (size < BYTES_PER_WORD) ||
634         (size > (1<<MAX_OBJ_ORDER)*PAGE_SIZE) ||
635         (dtor && !ctor) ||
636         (offset < 0 || offset > size))
637         BUG();
638
639     Perform basic sanity checks for bad usage
640
641     The parameters of the function are
642
643     name The human readable name of the cache
644     size The size of an object
645     offset This is used to specify a specific alignment for objects in the cache
646           but it usually left as 0
647     flags Static cache flags
648     ctor A constructor function to call for each object during slab creation
649     dtor The corresponding destructor function. It is expected the destructor
650           function leaves an object in an initialised state
651
652     These are all serious usage bugs that prevent the cache even attempting
653     to create
654
655     If the human readable name is greater than the maximum size for a cache
656     name (CACHE_NAMELEN)
  
```

635 An interrupt handler cannot create a cache as access to spinlocks and semaphores is needed

636 The object size must be at least a word in size. Slab is not suitable for objects that are measured in bits

637 The largest possible slab that can be created is  $2^{MAX\_OBJ\_ORDER}$  number of pages which provides 32 pages.

638 A destructor cannot be used if no constructor is available

639 The offset cannot be before the slab or beyond the boundary of the first page

640 Call BUG() to exit

```

642 #if DEBUG
643     if ((flags & SLAB_DEBUG_INITIAL) && !ctor) {
644         printk("%sNo con, but init state check
645             requested - %s\n", func_nm, name);
646         flags &= ~SLAB_DEBUG_INITIAL;
647     }
648
649     if ((flags & SLAB_POISON) && ctor) {
650         printk("%sPoisoning requested, but con given - %s\n",
651             func_nm, name);
652         flags &= ~SLAB_POISON;
653     }
654 #if FORCED_DEBUG
655     if ((size < (PAGE_SIZE>>3)) && !(flags & SLAB_MUST_HWCACHE_ALIGN))
656         flags |= SLAB_RED_ZONE;
657     if (!ctor)
658         flags |= SLAB_POISON;
659 #endif
660 #endif
661     BUG_ON(flags & ~CREATE_MASK);

```

This block performs debugging checks if CONFIG\_SLAB\_DEBUG is set

643-646 The flag SLAB\_DEBUG\_INITIAL requests that the constructor check the objects to make sure they are in an initialised state. For this, a constructor must obviously exist. If it doesn't, the flag is cleared

649-653 A slab can be poisoned with a known pattern to make sure an object wasn't used before it was allocated but a constructor would ruin this pattern falsely reporting a bug. If a constructor exists, remove the SLAB\_POISON flag if set

655-660 Only small objects will be red zoned for debugging. Red zoning large objects would cause severe fragmentation

661-662 If there is no constructor, set the poison bit

670 The CREATE\_MASK is set with all the allowable flags `kmem_cache_create()` can be called with. This prevents callers using debugging flags when they are not available and BUG's it instead

```
673     cachep =
        (kmem_cache_t *) kmem_cache_alloc(&cache_cache,
                                         SLAB_KERNEL);
674     if (!cachep)
675         goto opps;
676     memset(cachep, 0, sizeof(kmem_cache_t));
```

Allocate a `kmem_cache_t` from the `cache_cache` slab cache.

673 Allocate a cache descriptor object from the `cache_cache`(See Section 4.2.2)

674-675 If out of memory goto `opps` which handles the oom situation

676 Zero fill the object to prevent surprises with uninitialised data

```
682     if (size & (BYTES_PER_WORD-1)) {
683         size += (BYTES_PER_WORD-1);
684         size &= ~(BYTES_PER_WORD-1);
685         printk("%sForcing size word alignment
        - %s\n", func_nm, name);
686     }
687
688 #if DEBUG
689     if (flags & SLAB_RED_ZONE) {
690         flags &= ~SLAB_HWCACHE_ALIGN;
691         size += 2*BYTES_PER_WORD;
692     }
693 #endif
694     align = BYTES_PER_WORD;
695     if (flags & SLAB_HWCACHE_ALIGN)
696         align = L1_CACHE_BYTES;
697
698     if (size >= (PAGE_SIZE>>3))
699         flags |= CFLGS_OFF_SLAB;
700
701     if (flags & SLAB_HWCACHE_ALIGN) {
702         while (size < align/2)
703             align /= 2;
```



```

716             size = (size+align-1)&(~(align-1));
717     }

```

Align the object size to the word size

682 If the size is not aligned to the size of a word then...

683 Increase the object by the size of a word

684 Mask out the lower bits, this will effectively round the object size up to the next word boundary

685 Print out an informational message for debugging purposes

688-697 If debugging is enabled then the alignments have to change slightly

694 Don't bother trying to align things to the hardware cache. The red zoning of the object is going to offset it by moving the object one word away from the cache boundary

695 The size of the object increases by two BYTES\_PER\_WORD to store the red zone mark at either end of the object

698 Align the object on a word size

699-700 If requested, align the objects to the L1 CPU cache

703 If the objects are large, store the slab descriptors off-slab. This will allow better packing of objects into the slab

710 If hardware cache alignment is requested, the size of the objects must be adjusted to align themselves to the hardware cache

714-715 This is important to arches (e.g. Alpha or Pentium 4) with large L1 cache bytes. `align` will be adjusted to be the smallest that will give hardware cache alignment. For machines with large L1 cache lines, two or more small objects may fit into each line. For example, two objects from the size-32 cache will fit on one cache line from a Pentium 4

716 Round the cache size up to the hardware cache alignment

```

724     do {
725         unsigned int break_flag = 0;
726 cal_wastage:
727         kmem_cache_estimate(cachep->gfporder,
728                             size, flags,
729                             &left_over,
730                             &cachep->num);
729         if (break_flag)

```

```

730             break;
731             if (cachep->gfporder >= MAX_GFP_ORDER)
732                 break;
733             if (!cachep->num)
734                 goto next;
735             if (flags & CFLGS_OFF_SLAB &&
736                 cachep->num > offslab_limit) {
737                 cachep->gfporder--;
738                 break_flag++;
739                 goto cal_wastage;
740             }
741
742             if (cachep->gfporder >= slab_break_gfp_order)
743                 break;
744
745             if ((left_over*8) <= (PAGE_SIZE<<cachep->gfporder))
746                 break;
747 next:
748             cachep->gfporder++;
749         } while (1);
750
751         if (!cachep->num) {
752             printk("kmem_cache_create: couldn't
753                 create cache %s.\n", name);
754             kmem_cache_free(&cache_cache, cachep);
755             cachep = NULL;
756             goto opps;
757         }

```

Calculate how many objects will fit on a slab and adjust the slab size as necessary

727-728 `kmem_cache_estimate()` (See Section 4.0.2) calculates the number of objects that can fit on a slab at the current gfp order and what the amount of leftover bytes will be

729-730 The `break_flag` is set if the number of objects fitting on the slab exceeds the number that can be kept when offslab slab descriptors are used

731-732 The order number of pages used must not exceed `MAX_GFP_ORDER` (5)

733-734 If even one object didn't fill, `goto next:` which will increase the `gfporder` used for the cache

735 If the slab descriptor is kept off-cache but the number of objects exceeds the number that can be tracked with `bufctl`'s off-slab then ....

737 Reduce the order number of pages used

738 Set the `break_flag` so the loop will exit

739 Calculate the new wastage figures

746-747 The `slab_break_gfp_order` is the order to not exceed unless 0 objects fit on the slab. This check ensures the order is not exceeded

749-759 This is a rough check for internal fragmentation. If the wastage as a fraction of the total size of the cache is less than one eighth, it is acceptable

752 If the fragmentation is too high, increase the gfp order and recalculate the number of objects that can be stored and the wastage

755 If after adjustments, objects still do not fit in the cache, it cannot be created

757-758 Free the cache descriptor and set the pointer to NULL

758 Goto `opps` which simply returns the NULL pointer

```

761         slab_size =
           L1_CACHE_ALIGN(cachep->num*sizeof(kmem_bufctl_t)+sizeof(slab_t));
762
763         if (flags & CFLGS_OFF_SLAB && left_over >= slab_size) {
764             flags &= ~CFLGS_OFF_SLAB;
765             left_over -= slab_size;
766         }

```

Align the slab size to the hardware cache

761 `slab_size` is the total size of the slab descriptor *not* the size of the slab itself. It is the size `slab_t` struct and the number of objects \* size of the `bufctl`

767-769 If there is enough left over space for the slab descriptor and it was specified to place the descriptor off-slab, remove the flag and update the amount of `left_over` bytes there is. This will impact the cache colouring but with the large objects associated with off-slab descriptors, this is not a problem

```

773         offset += (align-1);
774         offset &= ~(align-1);
775         if (!offset)
776             offset = L1_CACHE_BYTES;
777         cachep->colour_off = offset;
778         cachep->colour = left_over/offset;

```

Calculate colour offsets.

773-774 `offset` is the offset within the page the caller requested. This will make sure the offset requested is at the correct alignment for cache usage

775-776 If somehow the offset is 0, then set it to be aligned for the CPU cache

777 This is the offset to use to keep objects on different cache lines. Each slab created will be given a different colour offset

778 This is the number of different offsets that can be used

```

781         if (!cachep->gfporder && !(flags & CFLGS_OFF_SLAB))
782             flags |= CFLGS_OPTIMIZE;
783
784         cachep->flags = flags;
785         cachep->gfpflags = 0;
786         if (flags & SLAB_CACHE_DMA)
787             cachep->gfpflags |= GFP_DMA;
788         spin_lock_init(&cachep->spinlock);
789         cachep->objsize = size;
790         INIT_LIST_HEAD(&cachep->slabs_full);
791         INIT_LIST_HEAD(&cachep->slabs_partial);
792         INIT_LIST_HEAD(&cachep->slabs_free);
793
794         if (flags & CFLGS_OFF_SLAB)
795             cachep->slabp_cache =
796                 kmem_find_general_cachep(slab_size,0);
796         cachep->ctor = ctor;
797         cachep->dtor = dtor;
799         strcpy(cachep->name, name);
800
801 #ifdef CONFIG_SMP
802         if (g_cpucache_up)
803             enable_cpucache(cachep);
804 #endif

```

Initialise remaining fields in cache descriptor

781-782 For caches with slabs of only 1 page, the CFLGS\_OPTIMIZE flag is set. In reality it makes no difference as the flag is unused

784 Set the cache static flags

785 Zero out the gfpflags. Defunct operation as memset after the cache descriptor was allocated would do this

786-787 If the slab is for DMA use, set the GFP\_DMA flag so the buddy allocator will use ZONE\_DMA

788 Initialise the spinlock for access the cache

789 Copy in the object size, which now takes hardware cache alignment if necessary

790-792 Initialise the slab lists

794-795 If the descriptor is kept off-slab, allocate a slab manager and place it for use in `slabp_cache`. See Section 4.1.1

796-797 Set the pointers to the constructor and destructor functions

799 Copy in the human readable name

802-803 If per-cpu caches are enabled, create a set for this cache. See Section 4.4

```

806         down(&cache_chain_sem);
807         {
808             struct list_head *p;
809
810             list_for_each(p, &cache_chain) {
811                 kmem_cache_t *pc = list_entry(p,
812                                     kmem_cache_t, next);
813
814                 if (!strcmp(pc->name, name))
815                     BUG();
816             }
817         }
818
819         list_add(&cachep->next, &cache_chain);
820         up(&cache_chain_sem);
821 opps:
822         return cachep;
823     }

```

Add the new cache to teh cache chain

806 Acquire the semaphore used to synchronize access to the cache chain

810-816 Check every cache on the cache chain and make sure there isn't a cache there with the same name. If there is, it means two caches of the same type have been created which is a serious bug

811 Get the cache from the list

814-815 Compare the names and if they match bug. It is worth noting that the new cache is not deleted, but this error is the result of sloppy programming during development and not a normal scenario

822 Link the cache into the chain.

823 Release the cache chain semaphore.

825 Return the new cache pointer

## 4.0.2 Calculating the Number of Objects on a Slab

**Function:** `kmem_cache_estimate` (*mm/slab.c*)

During cache creation, it is determined how many objects can be stored in a slab and how much waste-age there will be. The following function calculates how many objects may be stored, taking into account if the slab and bufctl's must be stored on-slab.

```

388 static void kmem_cache_estimate (unsigned long gfporder, size_t size,
389                                 int flags, size_t *left_over, unsigned int *num)
390 {
391     int i;
392     size_t wastage = PAGE_SIZE<<gfporder;
393     size_t extra = 0;
394     size_t base = 0;
395
396     if (!(flags & CFLGS_OFF_SLAB)) {
397         base = sizeof(slab_t);
398         extra = sizeof(kmem_bufctl_t);
399     }
400     i = 0;
401     while (i*size + L1_CACHE_ALIGN(base+i*extra) <= wastage)
402         i++;
403     if (i > 0)
404         i--;
405
406     if (i > SLAB_LIMIT)
407         i = SLAB_LIMIT;
408
409     *num = i;
410     wastage -= i*size;
411     wastage -= L1_CACHE_ALIGN(base+i*extra);
412     *left_over = wastage;
413 }

```

388 The parameters of the function are as follows

`gfporder` The  $2^{gfporder}$  number of pages to allocate for each slab

`size` The size of each object

`flags` The cache flags

`left_over` The number of bytes left over in the slab. Returned to caller

`num` The number of objects that will fit in a slab. Returned to caller

392 `wastage` is decremented through the function. It starts with the maximum possible amount of wast-age.

393 `extra` is the number of bytes needed to store `kmem_bufctl_t`

394 `base` is where usable memory in the slab starts

396 If the slab descriptor is kept on cache, the base begins at the end of the `slab_t` struct and the number of bytes needed to store the `bufctl` is the size of `kmem_bufctl_t`

400 `i` becomes the number of objects the slab can hold

401-402 This counts up the number of objects that the cache can store. `i*size` is the amount of memory needed to store the object itself. `L1_CACHE_ALIGN(base+i*extra)` is slightly trickier. This is calculating the amount of memory needed to store the `kmem_bufctl_t` of which one exists for every object in the slab. As it is at the beginning of the slab, it is L1 cache aligned so that the first object in the slab will be aligned to hardware cache. `i*extra` will calculate the amount of space needed to hold a `kmem_bufctl_t` for this object. As `wast-age` starts out as the size of the slab, its use is overloaded here.

403-404 Because the previous loop counts until the slab overflows, the number of objects that can be stored is `i-1`.

406-407 `SLAB_LIMIT` is the absolute largest number of objects a slab can store. It is defined as `0xffffffe` as this the largest number `kmem_bufctl_t()`, which is an unsigned int, can hold

409 `num` is now the number of objects a slab can hold

410 Take away the space taken up by all the objects from `wast-age`

411 Take away the space taken up by the `kmem_bufctl_t`

412 `Wast-age` has now been calculated as the left over space in the slab

### 4.0.3 Cache Shrinking

Two varieties of shrink functions are provided. `kmem_cache_shrink()` removes all slabs from `slabs_free` and returns the number of pages freed as a result. `__kmem_cache_shrink()` frees all slabs from `slabs_free` and then verifies that `slabs_partial` and `slabs_full` are empty. This is important during cache destruction when it doesn't matter how many pages are freed, just that the cache is empty.

**Function: `kmem_cache_shrink`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function performs basic debugging checks and then acquires the cache descriptor lock before freeing slabs. At one time, it also used to call `drain_cpu_caches()` to free up objects on the per-cpu cache. It is curious that this was removed as it is possible slabs could not be freed due to an object been allocation on a per-cpu cache but not in use.

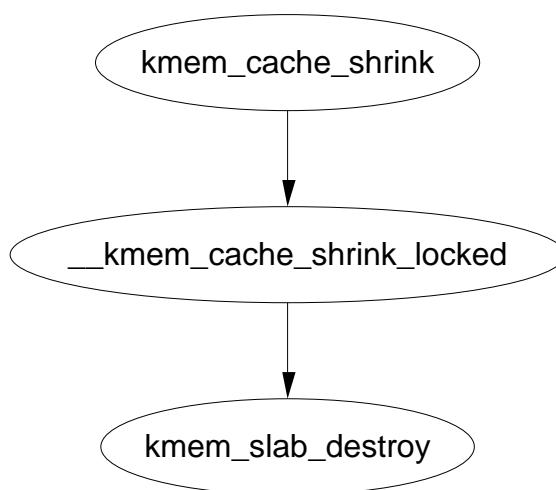


Figure 4.2: kmem\_cache\_shrink

```

966 int kmem_cache_shrink(kmem_cache_t *cachep)
967 {
968     int ret;
969
970     if (!cachep || in_interrupt() || !is_chained_kmem_cache(cachep))
971         BUG();
972
973     spin_lock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
974     ret = __kmem_cache_shrink_locked(cachep);
975     spin_unlock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
976
977     return ret << cachep->gfporder;
978 }

```

966 The parameter is the cache been shrunk

970 Check that

- The cache pointer is not null
- That an interrupt isn't trying to do this
- That the cache is on the cache chain and not a bad pointer

973 Acquire the cache descriptor lock and disable interrupts

974 Shrink the cache

975 Release the cache lock and enable interrupts

976 This returns the number of pages freed but does not take into account the objects freed by draining the CPU.



**Function: `__kmem_cache_shrink`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function is identical to `kmem_cache_shrink()` except it returns if the cache is empty or not. This is important during cache destruction when it is not important how much memory was freed, just that it is safe to delete the cache and not leak memory.

```

945 static int __kmem_cache_shrink(kmem_cache_t *cachep)
946 {
947     int ret;
948
949     drain_cpu_caches(cachep);
950
951     spin_lock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
952     __kmem_cache_shrink_locked(cachep);
953     ret = !list_empty(&cachep->slabs_full) ||
954          !list_empty(&cachep->slabs_partial);
955     spin_unlock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
956     return ret;
957 }
```

949 Remove all objects from the per-CPU objects cache

951 Acquire the cache descriptor lock and disable interrupts

952 Free all slabs in the `slabs_free` list

954-954 Check the `slabs_partial` and `slabs_full` lists are empty

955 Release the cache descriptor lock and re-enable interrupts

956 Return if the cache has all its slabs free or not

**Function: `__kmem_cache_shrink_locked`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This does the dirty work of freeing slabs. It will keep destroying them until the growing flag gets set, indicating the cache is in use or until there is no more slabs in `slabs_free`.

```

917 static int __kmem_cache_shrink_locked(kmem_cache_t *cachep)
918 {
919     slab_t *slabp;
920     int ret = 0;
921
922     while (!cachep->growing) {
923         struct list_head *p;
924
925         p = cachep->slabs_free.prev;
926         if (p == &cachep->slabs_free)
```

```

928             break;
929
930             slabp = list_entry(cachep->slabs_free.prev, slab_t, list);
931 #if DEBUG
932             if (slabp->inuse)
933                 BUG();
934 #endif
935             list_del(&slabp->list);
936
937             spin_unlock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
938             kmem_slab_destroy(cachep, slabp);
939             ret++;
940             spin_lock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
941     }
942     return ret;
943 }

```

923 While the cache is not growing, free slabs

926-930 Get the last slab on the `slabs_free` list

932-933 If debugging is available, make sure it is not in use. If it is not in use, it should not be on the `slabs_free` list in the first place

935 Remove the slab from the list

937 Re-enable interrupts. This function is called with interrupts disabled and this is to free the interrupt as quickly as possible.

938 Delete the slab (See Section 4.1.4)

939 Record the number of slabs freed

940 Acquire the cache descriptor lock and disable interrupts

## 4.0.4 Cache Destroying

When a module is unloaded, it is responsible for destroying any cache it has created as during module loading, it is ensured there is not two caches of the same name. Core kernel code often does not destroy its caches as their existence persists for the life of the system. The steps taken to destroy a cache are

- Delete the cache from the cache chain
- Shrink the cache to delete all slabs (See Section 4.0.3)
- Free any per CPU caches (`kfree()`)
- Delete the cache descriptor from the `cache_cache` (See Section: 4.2.3)

Figure 4.3 Shows the call graph for this task.

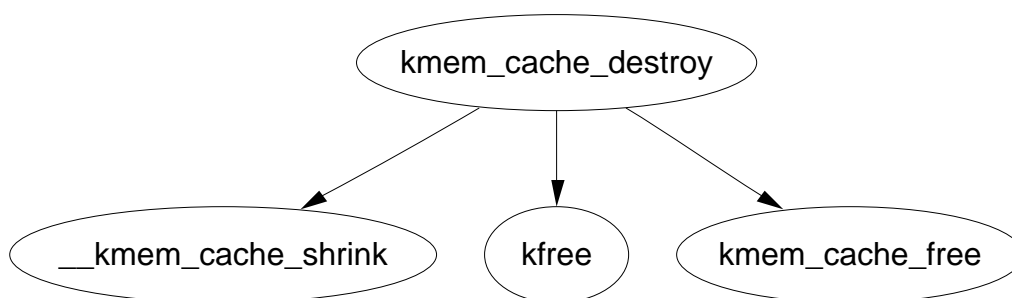


Figure 4.3: kmem\_cache\_destroy

**Function:** kmem\_cache\_destroy (*mm/slab.c*)

```

995 int kmem_cache_destroy (kmem_cache_t * cachep)
996 {
997     if (!cachep || in_interrupt() || cachep->growing)
998         BUG();
999
1000     /* Find the cache in the chain of caches. */
1001     down(&cache_chain_sem);
1002     /* the chain is never empty, cache_cache is never destroyed */
1003     if (clock_searchp == cachep)
1004         clock_searchp = list_entry(cachep->next.next,
1005                                   kmem_cache_t, next);
1006     list_del(&cachep->next);
1007     up(&cache_chain_sem);
1008
1009     if (__kmem_cache_shrink(cachep)) {
1010         printk(KERN_ERR "kmem_cache_destroy: Can't free all
objects %p\n",
1011               cachep);
1012         down(&cache_chain_sem);
1013         list_add(&cachep->next, &cache_chain);
1014         up(&cache_chain_sem);
1015         return 1;
1016     }
1017 #ifdef CONFIG_SMP
1018     {
1019         int i;
1020         for (i = 0; i < NR_CPUS; i++)
1021             kfree(cachep->cpudata[i]);
1022     }
1023 #endif
1024     kmem_cache_free(&cache_cache, cachep);

```

```

1025
1026         return 0;
1027 }

```

997-998 Sanity check. Make sure the `cachep` is not null, that an interrupt isn't trying to do this and that the cache hasn't been marked growing, indicating it is in use

1001 Acquire the semaphore for accessing the cache chain

1003-1005 Acquire the list entry from the cache chain

1006 Delete this cache from the cache chain

1007 Release the cache chain semaphore

1009 Shrink the cache to free all slabs (See Section 4.0.3)

1010-1015 The shrink function returns true if there is still slabs in the cache. If there is, the cache cannot be destroyed so it is added back into the cache chain and the error reported

1020-1021 If SMP is enabled, the per-cpu data structures are deleted with `kfree` `kfree()`

1024 Delete the cache descriptor from the `cache_cache`

## 4.0.5 Cache Reaping

When the page allocator notices that memory is getting tight, it wakes `kswapd` to begin freeing up pages (See Section 2.1). One of the first ways it accomplishes this task is telling the slab allocator to reap caches. It has to be the slab allocator that selects the caches as other subsystems should not know anything about the cache internals.

The call graph in Figure 4.4 is deceptively simple. The task of selecting the proper cache to reap is quite long. In case there is many caches in the system, only `REAP_SCANLEN` caches are examined in each call. The last cache to be scanned is stored in the variable `clock_searchcp` so as not to examine the same caches over and over again. For each scanned cache, the reaper does the following

- Check flags for `SLAB_NO_REAP` and skip if set
- If the cache is growing, skip it
- if the cache has grown recently (`DFLGS_GROWN` is set in `dflags`), skip it but clear the flag so it will be reaped the next time
- Count the number of free slabs in `slabs_free` and calculate how many pages that would free in the variable `pages`

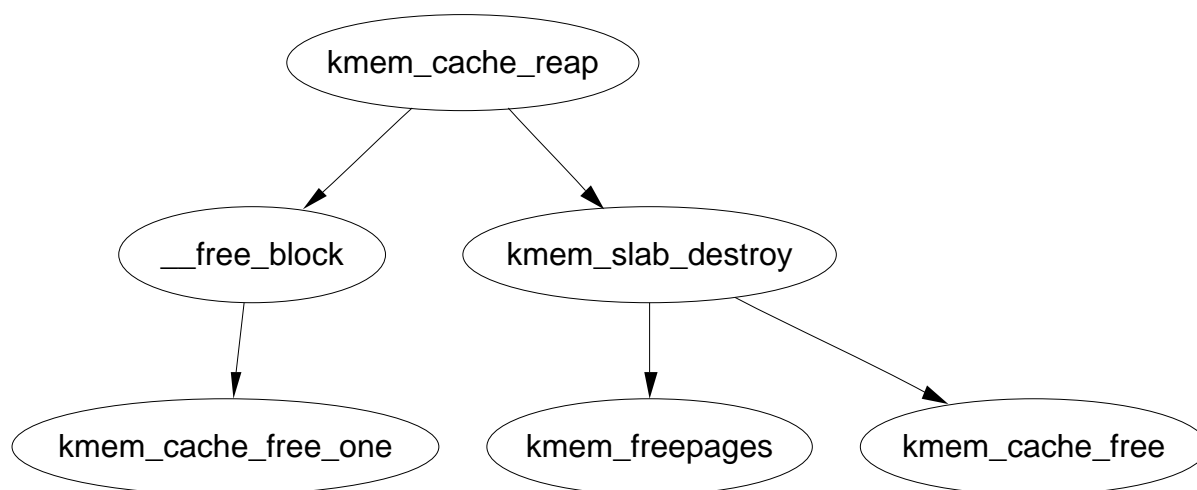


Figure 4.4: kmem\_cache\_reap

- If the cache has constructors or large slabs, adjust `pages` to make it less likely for the cache to be selected.
- If the number of pages that would be freed exceeds `REAP_PERFECT`, free half of the slabs in `slabs_free`
- Otherwise scan the rest of the caches and select the one that would free the most pages for freeing half of its slabs in `slabs_free`

**Function: kmem\_cache\_reap** (*mm/slab.c*)

Because of the size of this function, it will be broken up into three separate sections. The first is simple function preamble. The second is the selection of a cache to reap and the third is the freeing of the slabs

```

1736 int kmem_cache_reap (int gfp_mask)
1737 {
1738     slab_t *slabp;
1739     kmem_cache_t *searchp;
1740     kmem_cache_t *best_cache;
1741     unsigned int best_pages;
1742     unsigned int best_len;
1743     unsigned int scan;
1744     int ret = 0;
1745
1746     if (gfp_mask & __GFP_WAIT)
1747         down(&cache_chain_sem);
1748     else
1749         if (down_trylock(&cache_chain_sem))
1750             return 0;
  
```

```

1751
1752     scan = REAP_SCANLEN;
1753     best_len = 0;
1754     best_pages = 0;
1755     best_cachep = NULL;
1756     searchp = clock_searchp;

```

1736 The only parameter is the GFP flag. The only check made is against the `__GFP_WAIT` flag. As the only caller, `kswapd`, can sleep, this parameter is virtually worthless

1746-1747 Can the caller sleep? If yes, then acquire the semaphore

1749-1750 Else, try and acquire the semaphore and if not available, return

1752 `REAP_SCANLEN` (10) is the number of caches to examine.

1756 Set `searchp` to be the last cache that was examined at the last reap

```

1757     do {
1758         unsigned int pages;
1759         struct list_head* p;
1760         unsigned int full_free;
1761
1762         if (searchp->flags & SLAB_NO_REAP)
1763             goto next;
1764         spin_lock_irq(&searchp->spinlock);
1765         if (searchp->growing)
1766             goto next_unlock;
1767         if (searchp->dflags & DFLGS_GROWN) {
1768             searchp->dflags &= ~DFLGS_GROWN;
1769             goto next_unlock;
1770         }
1771     }
1772 #ifdef CONFIG_SMP
1773     {
1774         cpucache_t *cc = cc_data(searchp);
1775         if (cc && cc->avail) {
1776             __free_block(searchp, cc_entry(cc),
1777                          cc->avail);
1778             cc->avail = 0;
1779         }
1780 #endif
1781
1782     full_free = 0;
1783     p = searchp->slabs_free.next;

```

```

1784             while (p != &searchcp->slabs_free) {
1785                 slabp = list_entry(p, slab_t, list);
1786 #if DEBUG
1787                 if (slabp->inuse)
1788                     BUG();
1789 #endif
1790                 full_free++;
1791                 p = p->next;
1792             }
1793
1799             pages = full_free * (1<<searchcp->gfporder);
1800             if (searchcp->ctor)
1801                 pages = (pages*4+1)/5;
1802             if (searchcp->gfporder)
1803                 pages = (pages*4+1)/5;
1804             if (pages > best_pages) {
1805                 best_cachep = searchcp;
1806                 best_len = full_free;
1807                 best_pages = pages;
1808                 if (pages >= REAP_PERFECT) {
1809                     clock_searchp =
1810                         list_entry(searchcp->next.next,
1811                                   kmem_cache_t, next);
1812                     goto perfect;
1813                 }
1814 next_unlock:
1815                 spin_unlock_irq(&searchcp->spinlock);
1816 next:
1817                 searchcp =
1818                     list_entry(searchcp->next.next, kmem_cache_t, next);
1819             } while (--scan && searchcp != clock_searchcp);

```

This block examines REAP\_SCANLEN number of caches to select one to free

1765 Acquire an interrupt safe lock to the cache descriptor

1766-1767 If the cache is growing, skip it

1768-1771 If the cache has grown recently, skip it and clear the flag

1773-1779 Free any per CPU objects to the global pool

1784-1792 Count the number of slabs in the `slabs_free` list

1799 Calculate the number of pages all the slabs hold

1800-1801 If the objects have constructors, reduce the page count by one fifth to make it less likely to be selected for reaping

1802-1803 If the slabs consist of more than one page, reduce the page count by one fifth. This is because high order pages are hard to acquire

1804 If this is the best candidate found for reaping so far, check if it is perfect for reaping

1805-1807 Record the new maximums

1806 `best_len` is recorded so that it is easy to know how many slabs is half of the slabs in the free list

1808 If this cache is perfect for reaping then ....

1809 Update `clock_searchp`

1810 Goto perfect where half the slabs will be freed

1814 This label is reached if it was found the cache was growing after acquiring the lock

1815 Release the cache descriptor lock

1816 Move to the next entry in the cache chain

1818 Scan while `REAP_SCANLEN` has not been reached and we have not cycled around the whole cache chain

```

1820         clock_searchp = searchp;
1821
1822         if (!best_cachep)
1823             goto out;
1824
1825
1826         spin_lock_irq(&best_cachep->spinlock);
1827 perfect:
1828         /* free only 50% of the free slabs */
1829         best_len = (best_len + 1)/2;
1830         for (scan = 0; scan < best_len; scan++) {
1831             struct list_head *p;
1832
1833             if (best_cachep->growing)
1834                 break;
1835             p = best_cachep->slabs_free.prev;
1836             if (p == &best_cachep->slabs_free)
1837                 break;
1838             slabp = list_entry(p,slab_t,list);

```



```

1839 #if DEBUG
1840         if (slabp->inuse)
1841             BUG();
1842 #endif
1843         list_del(&slabp->list);
1844         STATS_INC_REAPED(best_cachep);
1845
1846         /* Safe to drop the lock. The slab is no longer linked to
the
1847         * cache.
1848         */
1849         spin_unlock_irq(&best_cachep->spinlock);
1850         kmem_slab_destroy(best_cachep, slabp);
1851         spin_lock_irq(&best_cachep->spinlock);
1852     }
1853     spin_unlock_irq(&best_cachep->spinlock);
1854     ret = scan * (1 << best_cachep->gfporder);
1855 out:
1856     up(&cache_chain_sem);
1857     return ret;
1858 }

```

This block will free half of the slabs from the selected cache

1820 Update `clock_searchp` for the next cache reap

1822-1824 If a cache was not found, goto out to free the cache chain and exit

1826 Acquire the cache chain spinlock and disable interrupts. The cachep descriptor has to be held by an interrupt safe lock as some caches may be used from interrupt context. The slab allocator has no way to differentiate between interrupt safe and unsafe caches

1829 Adjust `best_len` to be the number of slabs to free

1830-1852 Free `best_len` number of slabs

1833-1845 If the cache is growing, exit

1835 Get a slab from the list

1836-1837 If there is no slabs left in the list, exit

1838 Get the slab pointer

1840-1841 If debugging is enabled, make sure there isn't active objects in the slab

1843 Remove the slab from the `slabs_free` list

- 1844 Update statistics if enabled
- 1849 Free the cache descriptor and enable interrupts
- 1850 Destroy the slab. See Section 4.1.4
- 1851 Re-acquire the cache descriptor spinlock and disable interrupts
- 1853 Free the cache descriptor and enable interrupts
- 1854 `ret` is the number of pages that was freed
- 1856-1857 Free the cache semaphore and return the number of pages freed

## 4.1 Slabs

This section will describe how a slab is structured and managed. The struct which describes it is much simpler than the cache descriptor, but how the slab is arranged is slightly more complex. We begin with the descriptor.

```

155 typedef struct slab_s {
156     struct list_head      list;
157     unsigned long         colouroff;
158     void                  *s_mem;
159     unsigned int          inuse;
160     kmem_bufctl_t         free;
161 } slab_t;

```

`list` The list the slab belongs to. One of `slab_full`, `slab_partial` and `slab_free`

`colouroff` The colour offset is the offset of the first object within the slab. The address of the first object is `s_mem + colouroff`. See Section 4.1.1

`s_mem` The starting address of the first object within the slab

`inuse` Number of active objects in the slab

`free` This is an array of `bufctl`'s used for storing locations of free objects. See the companion document for seeing how to track free objects.

### 4.1.1 Storing the Slab Descriptor

**Function:** `kmem_cache_slabmgmt` (*mm/slab.c*)

This function will either allocate space to keep the slab descriptor off cache or reserve enough space at the beginning of the slab for the descriptor and the `bufctl`'s.

```

1030 static inline slab_t * kmem_cache_slabmgmt (
                                kmem_cache_t *cachep,
1031                                void *objp,
                                int colour_off,
                                int local_flags)
1032 {
1033     slab_t *slabp;
1034
1035     if (OFF_SLAB(cachep)) {
1037         slabp = kmem_cache_alloc(cachep->slabp_cache,
                                    local_flags);
1038
1039         if (!slabp)
1040             return NULL;
1041     } else {
1042         slabp = objp+colour_off;
1043         colour_off += L1_CACHE_ALIGN(cachep->num *
1044                                     sizeof(kmem_bufctl_t) +
1045                                     sizeof(slab_t));
1046     }
1047
1048     slabp->inuse = 0;
1049     slabp->colouroff = colour_off;
1050     slabp->s_mem = objp+colour_off;
1051
1052     return slabp;
1053 }
1054 }

```

1030 The parameters of the function are

`cachep` The cache the slab is to be allocated to

`objp` When the function is called, this points to the beginning of the slab

`colour_off` The colour offset for this slab

`local_flags` These are the flags for the cache. They are described in the companion document

1035-1040 If the slab descriptor is kept off cache...

1037 Allocate memory from the sizes cache. During cache creation, `slabp_cache` is set to the appropriate size cache to allocate from. See Section 4.0.1

1038 If the allocation failed, return

1040-1048 Reserve space at the beginning of the slab

1045 The address of the slab will be the beginning of the slab (`objp`) plus the colour offset

1046 `colour_off` is calculated to be the offset where the first object will be placed. The address is L1 cache aligned. `cachep->num * sizeof(kmem_bufctl_t)` is the amount of space needed to hold the bufctls for each object in the slab and `sizeof(slab_t)` is the size of the slab descriptor. This effectively has reserved the space at the beginning of the slab

1049 The number of objects in use on the slab is 0

1050 The colouroff is updated for placement of the new object

1051 The address of the first object is calculated as the address of the beginning of the slab plus the offset

#### Function: `kmem_find_general_cachep` (*mm/slab.c*)

If the slab descriptor is to be kept off-slab, this function, called during cache creation (See Section 4.0.1) will find the appropriate sizes cache to use and will be stored within the cache descriptor in the field `slabp_cache`.

```

1618 kmem_cache_t * kmem_find_general_cachep (size_t size,
                                           int gfpflags)
1619 {
1620     cache_sizes_t *csizep = cache_sizes;
1621
1622     for ( ; csizep->cs_size; csizep++) {
1623         if (size > csizep->cs_size)
1624             continue;
1625         break;
1626     }
1627     return (gfpflags & GFP_DMA) ? csizep->cs_dmacachep :
                                           csizep->cs_cachep;
1628 }

```

1618 `size` is the size of the slab descriptor. `gfpflags` is always 0 as DMA memory is not needed for a slab descriptor

1626-1630 Starting with the smallest size, keep increasing the size until a cache is found with buffers large enough to store the slab descriptor

1631 Return either a normal or DMA sized cache depending on the `gfpflags` passed in. In reality, only the `cs_cachep` is ever passed back

## 4.1.2 Slab Structure

### 4.1.3 Slab Creation

This section will show how a cache is grown when no objects are left in the `slabs_partial` list and there is no slabs in `slabs_free`. The principle function for this is `kmem_cache_grow()`. The tasks it fulfills are

- Perform basic sanity checks to guard against bad usage
- Calculate colour offset for objects in this slab
- Allocate memory for slab and acquire a slab descriptor
- Link the pages used for the slab to the slab and cache descriptors (See Section 4.1)
- Initialise objects in the slab
- Add the slab to the cache

**Function:** `kmem_cache_grow` (*mm/slab.c*)

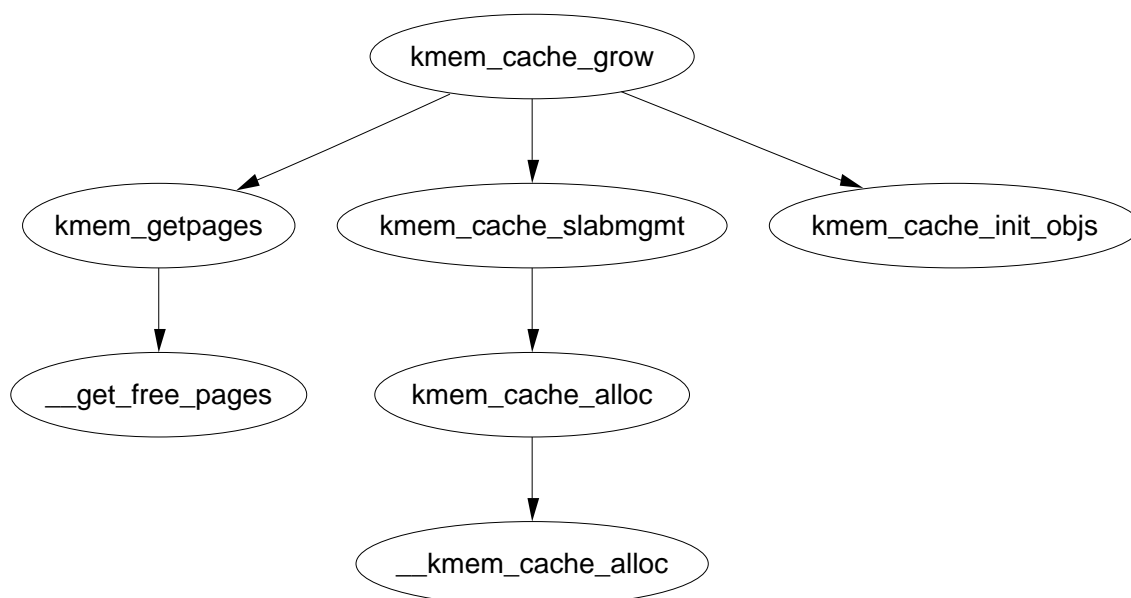


Figure 4.5: `kmem_cache_grow`

Figure 4.5 shows the call graph to grow a cache. This function will be dealt with in blocks. Each block corresponds to one of the tasks described in the previous section

```

1103 static int kmem_cache_grow (kmem_cache_t * cachep, int flags)
1104 {
1105     slab_t *slabp;
1106     struct page *page;
1107     void *objp;
1108     size_t offset;
1109     unsigned int i, local_flags;
1110     unsigned long ctor_flags;
1111     unsigned long save_flags;

```

Basic declarations. The parameters of the function are

`cachep` The cache to allocate a new slab to

`flags` The flags for a slab creation

```

1116         if (flags & ~(SLAB_DMA|SLAB_LEVEL_MASK|SLAB_NO_GROW))
1117             BUG();
1118         if (flags & SLAB_NO_GROW)
1119             return 0;
1120
1127         if (in_interrupt() && (flags & SLAB_LEVEL_MASK) != SLAB_ATOMIC)
1128             BUG();
1129
1130         ctor_flags = SLAB_CTOR_CONSTRUCTOR;
1131         local_flags = (flags & SLAB_LEVEL_MASK);
1132         if (local_flags == SLAB_ATOMIC)
1133             ctor_flags |= SLAB_CTOR_ATOMIC;

```

Perform basic sanity checks to guard against bad usage. The checks are made here rather than `kmem_cache_alloc()` to protect the critical path. There is no point checking the flags every time an object needs to be allocated.

1116-1117 Make sure only allowable flags are used for allocation

1118-1119 Do not grow the cache if this is set. In reality, it is never set

1127-1128 If this called within interrupt context, make sure the ATOMIC flag is set

1130 This flag tells the constructor it is to init the object

1131 The `local_flags` are just those relevant to the page allocator

1132-1137 If the ATOMIC flag is set, the constructor needs to know about it in case it wants to make new allocations

```

1140         spin_lock_irqsave(&cachep->spinlock, save_flags);
1141
1143         offset = cachep->colour_next;
1144         cachep->colour_next++;
1145         if (cachep->colour_next >= cachep->colour)
1146             cachep->colour_next = 0;
1147         offset *= cachep->colour_off;
1148         cachep->dflags |= DFLGS_GROWN;
1149
1150         cachep->growing++;
1151         spin_unlock_irqrestore(&cachep->spinlock, save_flags);

```

Calculate colour offset for objects in this slab

1140 Acquire an interrupt safe lock for accessing the cache descriptor

1143 Get the offset for objects in this slab

1144 Move to the next colour offset

1145-1146 If `colour` has been reached, there is no more offsets available, so reset `colour_next` to 0

1147 `colour_off` is the size of each offset, so `offset * colour_off` will give how many bytes to offset the objects to

1148 Mark the cache that it is growing so that `kmem_cache_reap()` will ignore this cache

1150 Increase the count for callers growing this cache

1151 Free the spinlock and re-enable interrupts

```

1163         if (!(objp = kmem_getpages(cachep, flags)))
1164             goto failed;
1165
1167         if (!(slabp = kmem_cache_slabmgmt(cachep,
                                           objp, offset,
                                           local_flags)))
1158             goto opps1;

```

Allocate memory for slab and acquire a slab descriptor

1163-1164 Allocate pages from the page allocator for the slab. See Section 4.6

1167 Acquire a slab descriptor. See Section 4.1.1

```

1171         i = 1 << cachep->gfporder;
1172         page = virt_to_page(objp);
1173         do {
1174             SET_PAGE_CACHE(page, cachep);
1175             SET_PAGE_SLAB(page, slabp);
1176             PageSetSlab(page);
1177             page++;
1178         } while (--i);

```

Link the pages for the slab used to the slab and cache descriptors

1171 `i` is the number of pages used for the slab. Each page has to be linked to the slab and cache descriptors.

1172 `objp` is a pointer to the beginning of the slab. The macro `virt_to_page()` will give the `struct page` for that address

1173-1178 Link each pages list field to the slab and cache descriptors

1174 `SET_PAGE_CACHE` links the page to the cache descriptor. See the companion document for details

1176 `SET_PAGE_SLAB` links the page to the slab descriptor. See the companion document for details

1176 Set the `PG_slab` page flag. See the companion document for a full list of page flags

1177 Move to the next page for this slab to be linked

```
1180         kmem_cache_init_objs(cachep, slabp, ctor_flags);
```

1180 Initialise all objects. See Section 4.2.1

```
1182         spin_lock_irqsave(&cachep->spinlock, save_flags);
```

```
1183         cachep->growing--;
```

```
1184
```

```
1186         list_add_tail(&slabp->list, &cachep->slabs_free);
```

```
1187         STATS_INC_GROWN(cachep);
```

```
1188         cachep->failures = 0;
```

```
1189
```

```
1190         spin_unlock_irqrestore(&cachep->spinlock, save_flags);
```

```
1191         return 1;
```

Add the slab to the cache

1182 Acquire the cache descriptor spinlock in an interrupt safe fashion

1183 Decrease the growing count

1186 Add the slab to the end of the `slabs_free` list

1187 If `STATS` is set, increase the `cachep→grown` field

1188 Set failures to 0. This field is never used elsewhere

1190 Unlock the spinlock in an interrupt safe fashion

1191 Return success



```

1192 opps1:
1193     kmem_freepages(cachep, objp);
1194 failed:
1195     spin_lock_irqsave(&cachep->spinlock, save_flags);
1196     cachep->growing--;
1197     spin_unlock_irqrestore(&cachep->spinlock, save_flags);
1298     return 0;
1299 }
1300

```

#### Error handling

1192-1193 opps1 is reached if the pages for the slab were allocated. They must be freed

1195 Acquire the spinlock for accessing the cache descriptor

1196 Reduce the growing count

1197 Release the spinlock

1298 Return failure

### 4.1.4 Slab Destroying

When a cache is been shrunk or destroyed, the slabs will be deleted. As the objects may have destructors, they must be called so the tasks of this function are

- If available, call the destructor for every object in the slab
- If debugging is enabled, check the red marking and poison pattern
- Free the pages the slab uses

The call graph at Figure 4.6 is very simple.

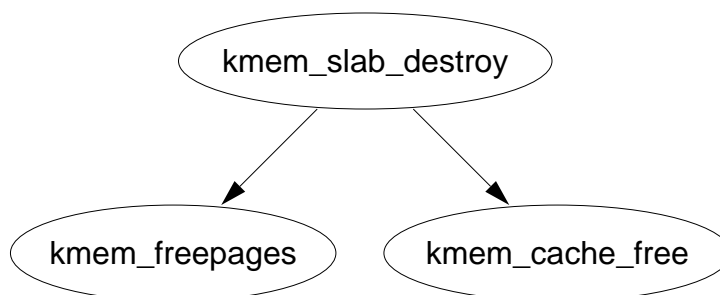


Figure 4.6: kmem\_slab\_destroy

**Function: kmem\_slab\_destroy** (*mm/slab.c*)

The debugging section has been omitted from this function but are almost identical to the debugging section during object allocation. See Section 4.2.1 for how the markers and poison pattern are checked.

```

555 static void kmem_slab_destroy (kmem_cache_t *cachep, slab_t *slabp)
556 {
557     if (cachep->dtor
561     ) {
562         int i;
563         for (i = 0; i < cachep->num; i++) {
564             void* objp = slabp->s_mem+cachep->objsize*i;

565-574 DEBUG: Check red zone markers

575             if (cachep->dtor)
576                 (cachep->dtor)(objp, cachep, 0);

577-584 DEBUG: Check poison pattern

585         }
586     }
587
588     kmem_freepages(cachep, slabp->s_mem-slabp->colouroff);
589     if (OFF_SLAB(cachep))
590         kmem_cache_free(cachep->slabp_cache, slabp);
591 }

```

557-586 If a destructor is available, call it for each object in the slab

563-585 Cycle through each object in the slab

564 Calculate the address of the object to destroy

575-576 Call the destructor

588 Free the pages been used for the slab

589 If the slab descriptor is been kept off-slab, then free the memory been used for it

## 4.2 Objects

This section will cover how objects are managed. At this point, most of the real hard work has been completed by either the cache or slab managers.

### 4.2.1 Initialising Objects in a Slab

When a slab is created, all the objects in it put in an initialised state. If a constructor is available, it is called for each object and it is expected when an object is freed, it is left in its initialised state. Conceptually this is very simple, cycle through all objects and call the constructor and initialise the `kmem_bufctl` for it. The function `kmem_cache_init_objs()` is responsible for initialising the objects.

**Function: `kmem_cache_init_objs`** (*mm/slab.c*)

The vast part of this function is involved with debugging so we will start with the function without the debugging and explain that in detail before handling the debugging part. The two sections that are debugging are marked in the code excerpt below as Part 1 and Part 2.

```

1056 static inline void kmem_cache_init_objs (kmem_cache_t * cachep,
1057                                         slab_t * slabb, unsigned long ctor_flags)
1058 {
1059     int i;
1060
1061     for (i = 0; i < cachep->num; i++) {
1062         void* objp = slabb->s_mem+cachep->objsize*i;
1063-1070         /* Debugging Part 1 */
1077         if (cachep->ctor)
1078             cachep->ctor(objp, cachep, ctor_flags);
1079-1092         /* Debugging Part 2 */
1093             slab_bufctl(slabb)[i] = i+1;
1094     }
1095     slab_bufctl(slabb)[i-1] = BUFCTL_END;
1096     slabb->free = 0;
1097 }

```

1056 The parameters of the function are

`cachep` The cache the objects are been initialised for

`slabb` The slab the objects are in

`ctor_flags` Flags the constructor needs whether this is an atomic allocation or not

1061 Initialise `cache->num` number of objects

1062 The base address for objects in the slab is `s_mem`. The address of the object to allocate is then `i * (size of a single object)`

1077-1078 If a constructor is available, call it

1093 The macro `slab_bufctl()` casts `slabp` to a `slab_t` slab descriptor and adds one to it. This brings the pointer to the end of the slab descriptor and then casts it back to a `kmem_bufctl_t` effectively giving the beginning of the `bufctl` array.

1096 The index of the first free object is 0 in the `bufctl` array

That covers the core of initialising objects. Next the first debugging part will be covered

```

1063 #if DEBUG
1064         if (cachep->flags & SLAB_RED_ZONE) {
1065             *((unsigned long*)(objp)) = RED_MAGIC1;
1066             *((unsigned long*)(objp + cachep->objsize -
1067                                     BYTES_PER_WORD)) = RED_MAGIC1;
1068             objp += BYTES_PER_WORD;
1069         }
1070 #endif

```

1064 If the cache is to be red zones then place a marker at either end of the object

1065 Place the marker at the beginning of the object

1066 Place the marker at the end of the object. Remember that the size of the object takes into account the size of the red markers when red zoning is enabled

1068 Increase the `objp` pointer by the size of the marker for the benefit of the constructor which is called after this debugging block

```

1079 #if DEBUG
1080         if (cachep->flags & SLAB_RED_ZONE)
1081             objp -= BYTES_PER_WORD;
1082         if (cachep->flags & SLAB_POISON)
1083             kmem_poison_obj(cachep, objp);
1084         if (cachep->flags & SLAB_RED_ZONE) {
1085             if (*((unsigned long*)(objp)) != RED_MAGIC1)
1086                 BUG();
1087             if (*((unsigned long*)(objp + cachep->objsize -
1088                                     BYTES_PER_WORD)) != RED_MAGIC1)
1089                 BUG();
1090         }
1091     }
1092 #endif

```

This is the debugging block that takes place after the constructor, if it exists, has been called.

1080-1081 The objp was increased by the size of the red marker in the previous debugging block so move it back again

1082-1084 If there was no constructor, poison the object with a known pattern that can be examined later to trap uninitialised writes

1086 Check to make sure the red marker at the beginning of the object was preserved to trap writes before the object

1088-1089 Check to make sure writes didn't take place past the end of the object

## 4.2.2 Object Allocation

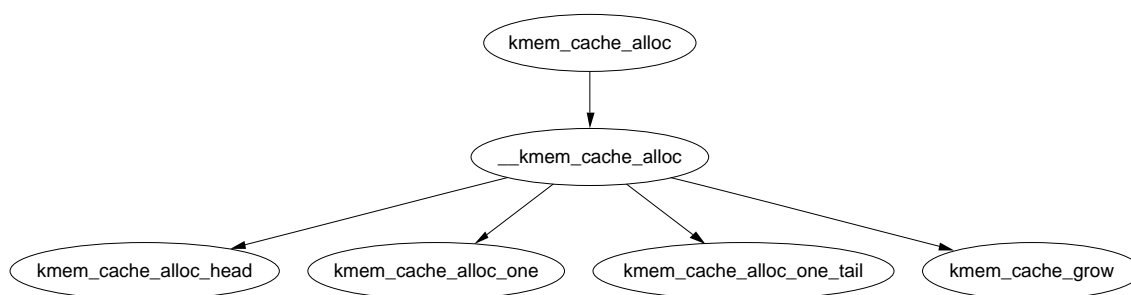


Figure 4.7: kmem\_cache\_alloc UP

**Function: kmem\_cache\_alloc** (*mm/slab.c*)

This trivial function simply calls `__kmem_cache_alloc()`.

```

1527 void * kmem_cache_alloc (kmem_cache_t *cachep, int flags)
1529 {
1530     return __kmem_cache_alloc(cachep, flags);
1531 }
  
```

**Function: \_\_kmem\_cache\_alloc (UP Case)** (*mm/slab.c*)

This will take the parts of the function specific to the UP case. The SMP case will be dealt with in the next section.

```

1336 static inline void * __kmem_cache_alloc (kmem_cache_t *cachep, int flags)
1337 {
1338     unsigned long save_flags;
1339     void* objp;
1340
1341     kmem_cache_alloc_head(cachep, flags);
1342 try_again:
1343     local_irq_save(save_flags);
  
```

```

1365         objp = kmem_cache_alloc_one(cachep);

1367         local_irq_restore(save_flags);
1368         return objp;
1369 alloc_new_slab:

1374         local_irq_restore(save_flags);
1375         if (kmem_cache_grow(cachep, flags))
1379             goto try_again;
1380         return NULL;
1381 }

```

1336 The parameters are the cache to allocate from and allocation specific flags.

1341 This function makes sure the appropriate combination of DMA flags are in use

1343 Disable interrupts and save the flags. This function is used by interrupts so this is the only way to provide synchronisation in the UP case

1365 This *macro* (See Section 4.2.2) allocates an object from one of the lists and returns it. If no objects are free, it calls *goto alloc\_new\_slab* at the end of this function

1367-1368 Restore interrupts and return

1374 At this label, no objects were free in `slabs_partial` and `slabs_free` is empty so a new slab is needed

1375 Allocate a new slab (See Section 4.1.3)

1379 A new slab is available so try again

1380 No slabs could be allocated so return failure

**Function:** `__kmem_cache_alloc` (SMP Case) (*mm/slab.c*)

This is what the function looks like in the SMP case

```

1336 static inline void * __kmem_cache_alloc (kmem_cache_t *cachep, int flags)
1337 {
1338     unsigned long save_flags;
1339     void* objp;
1340
1341     kmem_cache_alloc_head(cachep, flags);
1342 try_again:
1343     local_irq_save(save_flags);
1344     {
1345         cpucache_t *cc = cc_data(cachep);

```

```

1347
1348         if (cc) {
1349             if (cc->avail) {
1350                 STATS_INC_ALLOCHIT(cachep);
1351                 objp = cc_entry(cc)[--cc->avail];
1352             } else {
1353                 STATS_INC_ALLOCMISS(cachep);
1354                 objp =
1355                     kmem_cache_alloc_batch(cachep, cc, flags);
1356                 if (!objp)
1357                     goto alloc_new_slab_nolock;
1358             }
1359         } else {
1360             spin_lock(&cachep->spinlock);
1361             objp = kmem_cache_alloc_one(cachep);
1362             spin_unlock(&cachep->spinlock);
1363         }
1364         local_irq_restore(save_flags);
1365         return objp;
1366 alloc_new_slab:
1367     spin_unlock(&cachep->spinlock);
1368 alloc_new_slab_nolock:
1369     local_irq_restore(save_flags);
1370     if (kmem_cache_grow(cachep, flags))
1371         goto try_again;
1372     return NULL;
1373 }

```

1336-1345 Same as UP case

1347 Obtain the per CPU data for this cpu

1348-1358 If a per CPU cache is available then ....

1349 If there is an object available then ....

1350 Update statistics for this cache if enabled

1351 Get an object and update the avail figure

1352 Else an object is not available so ....

1353 Update statistics for this cache if enabled

1354 Allocate `batchcount` number of objects, place all but one of them in the per CPU cache and return the last one to `objp`

1355-1356 The allocation failed, so goto `alloc_new_slab_nolock` to grow the cache and allocate a new slab

1358-1362 If a per CPU cache is not available, take out the cache spinlock and allocate one object in the same way the UP case does. This is the case during the initialisation for the `cache_cache` for example

1361 Object was successfully assigned, release cache spinlock

1364-1368 Re-enable interrupts and return the allocated object

1369-1370 If `kmem_cache_alloc_one()` failed to allocate an object, it will goto here with the spinlock still held so it must be released

1373-1381 Same as the UP case

**Function: `kmem_cache_alloc_head`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This simple function ensures the right combination of slab and GFP flags are used for allocation from a slab. If a cache is for DMA use, this function will make sure the caller does not accidentally request normal memory and vice versa

```

1229 static inline void kmem_cache_alloc_head(kmem_cache_t *cachep, int flags)
1230 {
1231     if (flags & SLAB_DMA) {
1232         if (!(cachep->gfpflags & GFP_DMA))
1233             BUG();
1234     } else {
1235         if (cachep->gfpflags & GFP_DMA)
1236             BUG();
1237     }
1238 }
```

1229 The parameters are the cache we are allocating from and the flags requested for the allocation

1231 If the caller has requested memory for DMA use and ....

1232 The cache is not using DMA memory then `BUG()`

1235 Else if the caller has not requested DMA memory and this cache is for DMA use, `BUG()`

**Function: `kmem_cache_alloc_one`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This is a preprocessor macro. It may seem strange to not make this an inline function but it is a preprocessor macro for for a goto optimisation in `__kmem_cache_alloc()` (See Section 4.2.2)



```

1281 #define kmem_cache_alloc_one(cachep)          \
1282 ({                                           \
1283     struct list_head * slabs_partial, * entry; \
1284     slab_t *slabp;                            \
1285                                               \
1286     slabs_partial = &(cachep)->slabs_partial; \
1287     entry = slabs_partial->next;              \
1288     if (unlikely(entry == slabs_partial)) {   \
1289         struct list_head * slabs_free;       \
1290         slabs_free = &(cachep)->slabs_free;   \
1291         entry = slabs_free->next;              \
1292         if (unlikely(entry == slabs_free))    \
1293             goto alloc_new_slab;              \
1294         list_del(entry);                       \
1295         list_add(entry, slabs_partial);        \
1296     }                                          \
1297                                               \
1298     slabp = list_entry(entry, slab_t, list);   \
1299     kmem_cache_alloc_one_tail(cachep, slabp); \
1300 })

```

1286-1287 Get the first slab from the `slabs_partial` list

1288-1296 If a slab is not available from this list, execute this block

1289-1291 Get the first slab from the `slabs_free` list

1292-1293 If there is no slabs on `slabs_free`, then `goto alloc_new_slab()`. This `goto` label is in `__kmem_cache_alloc()` and it will grow the cache by one slab

1294-1295 Else remove the slab from the free list and place it on the `slabs_partial` list because an object is about to be removed from it

1298 Obtain the slab from the list

1299 Allocate one object from the slab

**Function: `kmem_cache_alloc_one_tail`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function is responsible for the allocation of one object from a slab. Much of it is debugging code.

```

1240 static inline void * kmem_cache_alloc_one_tail (kmem_cache_t *cachep,
1241                                                slab_t *slabp)
1242 {
1243     void *objp;
1244

```

```

1245     STATS_INC_ALLOCED(cachep);
1246     STATS_INC_ACTIVE(cachep);
1247     STATS_SET_HIGH(cachep);
1248
1250     slabp->inuse++;
1251     objp = slabp->s_mem + slabp->free*cachep->objsize;
1252     slabp->free=slab_bufctl(slabp)[slabp->free];
1253
1254     if (unlikely(slabp->free == BUFCTL_END)) {
1255         list_del(&slabp->list);
1256         list_add(&slabp->list, &cachep->slabs_full);
1257     }
1258 #if DEBUG
1259     if (cachep->flags & SLAB_POISON)
1260         if (kmem_check_poison_obj(cachep, objp))
1261             BUG();
1262     if (cachep->flags & SLAB_RED_ZONE) {
1264         if (xchg((unsigned long *)objp, RED_MAGIC2) !=
1265             RED_MAGIC1)
1266             BUG();
1267         if (xchg((unsigned long *) (objp+cachep->objsize -
1268             BYTES_PER_WORD), RED_MAGIC2) != RED_MAGIC1)
1269             BUG();
1270         objp += BYTES_PER_WORD;
1271     }
1272 #endif
1273     return objp;
1274 }

```

1230 The parameters are the cache and slab been allocated from

1245-1247 If stats are enabled, this will set three statistics. `ALLOCED` is the total number of objects that have been allocated. `ACTIVE` is the number of active objects in the cache. `HIGH` is the maximum number of objects that were active as a single time

1250 `inuse` is the number of objects active on this slab

1251 Get a pointer to a free object. `s_mem` is a pointer to the first object on the slab. `free` is an index of a free object in the slab. `index * object size` gives an offset within the slab

1252 This updates the free pointer to be an index of the next free object. See the companion document for seeing how to track free objects.

1254-1257 If the slab is full, remove it from the `slabs_partial` list and place it on the `slabs_full`.

1258-1272 Debugging code

1273 Without debugging, the object is returned to the caller

1259-1261 If the object was poisoned with a known pattern, check it to guard against uninitialised access

1264-1265 If red zoning was enabled, check the marker at the beginning of the object and confirm it is safe. Change the red marker to check for writes before the object later

1267-1269 Check the marker at the end of the object and change it to check for writes after the object later

1270 Update the object pointer to point to after the red marker

1273 Return the object

**Function: `kmem_cache_alloc_batch`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function allocate a batch of objects to a CPU cache of objects. It is only used in the SMP case. In many ways it is very similar `kmem_cache_alloc_one()` (See Section 4.2.2).

```

1303 void* kmem_cache_alloc_batch(kmem_cache_t* cachep,
                                cpucache_t* cc, int flags)
1304 {
1305     int batchcount = cachep->batchcount;
1306
1307     spin_lock(&cachep->spinlock);
1308     while (batchcount--) {
1309         struct list_head * slabs_partial, * entry;
1310         slab_t *slabp;
1311         /* Get slab alloc is to come from. */
1312         slabs_partial = &(cachep)->slabs_partial;
1313         entry = slabs_partial->next;
1314         if (unlikely(entry == slabs_partial)) {
1315             struct list_head * slabs_free;
1316             slabs_free = &(cachep)->slabs_free;
1317             entry = slabs_free->next;
1318             if (unlikely(entry == slabs_free))
1319                 break;
1320             list_del(entry);
1321             list_add(entry, slabs_partial);
1322         }
1323
1324         slabp = list_entry(entry, slab_t, list);
1325         cc_entry(cc)[cc->avail++] =

```

```

1326             kmem_cache_alloc_one_tail(cachep, slabp);
1327     }
1328     spin_unlock(&cachep->spinlock);
1329
1330     if (cc->avail)
1331         return cc_entry(cc)[--cc->avail];
1332     return NULL;
1333 }

```

1303 The parameters are the cache to allocate from, the per CPU cache to fill and allocation flags

1305 batchcount is the number of objects to allocate

1307 Obtain the spinlock for access to the cache descriptor

1308-1327 Loop batchcount times

1309-1322 This is example the same as `kmem_cache_alloc_one()` (See Section 4.2.2) . It selects a slab from either `slabs_partial` or `slabs_free` to allocate from. If none are available, break out of the loop

1324-1325 Call `kmem_cache_alloc_one_tail()` (See Section 4.2.2) and place it in the per CPU cache.

1328 Release the cache descriptor lock

1330-1331 Take one of the objects allocated in this batch and return it

1332 If no object was allocated, return. `__kmem_cache_alloc()` will grow the cache by one slab and try again

### 4.2.3 Object Freeing

**Function:** `kmem_cache_free` (*mm/slab.c*)

```

1574 void kmem_cache_free (kmem_cache_t *cachep, void *objp)
1575 {
1576     unsigned long flags;
1577     #if DEBUG
1578     CHECK_PAGE(virt_to_page(objp));
1579     if (cachep != GET_PAGE_CACHE(virt_to_page(objp)))
1580         BUG();
1581     #endif
1582
1583     local_irq_save(flags);
1584     __kmem_cache_free(cachep, objp);
1585     local_irq_restore(flags);
1586 }

```

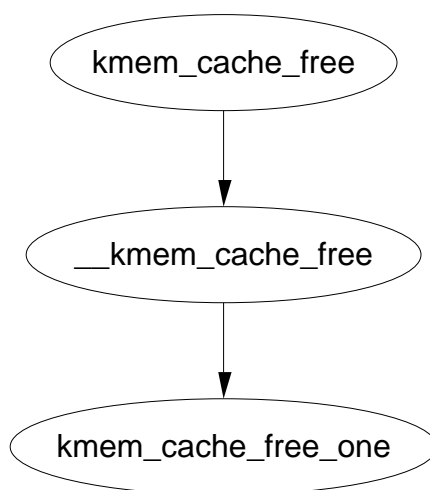


Figure 4.8: kmem\_cache\_free

1574 The parameter is the cache the object is been freed from and the object itself

1577-1581 If debugging is enabled, the page will first be checked with `CHECK_PAGE()` to make sure it is a slab page. Secondly the page list will be examined to make sure it belongs to this cache (See Section 4.1.2)

1583 Interrupts are disabled to protect the path

1584 `__kmem_cache_free()` will free the object to the per CPU cache for the SMP case and to the global pool in the normal case

1585 Re-enable interrupts

**Function:** `__kmem_cache_free` (*mm/slab.c*)

This covers what the function looks like in the UP case. Clearly, it simply releases the object to the slab.

```

1491 static inline void __kmem_cache_free (kmem_cache_t *cachep, void* objp)
1492 {
1515     kmem_cache_free_one(cachep, objp);
1517 }
  
```

**Function:** `__kmem_cache_free` (*mm/slab.c*)

This case is slightly more interesting. In this case, the object is released to the per-cpu cache if it is available.

```

1491 static inline void __kmem_cache_free (kmem_cache_t *cachep, void* objp)
1492 {
1494     cpucache_t *cc = cc_data(cachep);
1495
  
```

```

1496     CHECK_PAGE(virt_to_page(objp));
1497     if (cc) {
1498         int batchcount;
1499         if (cc->avail < cc->limit) {
1500             STATS_INC_FREEHIT(cachep);
1501             cc_entry(cc)[cc->avail++] = objp;
1502             return;
1503         }
1504         STATS_INC_FREEMISS(cachep);
1505         batchcount = cachep->batchcount;
1506         cc->avail -= batchcount;
1507         free_block(cachep,
1508                 &cc_entry(cc)[cc->avail], batchcount);
1509         cc_entry(cc)[cc->avail++] = objp;
1510         return;
1511     } else {
1512         free_block(cachep, &objp, 1);
1513     }
1517 }

```

1494 Get the data for this per CPU cache (See Section 4.4)

1496 Make sure the page is a slab page

1497-1511 If a per CPU cache is available, try to use it. This is not always available. During cache destruction for instance, the per CPU caches are already gone

1499-1503 If the number of available in the per CPU cache is below limit, then add the object to the free list and return

1504 Update Statistics if enabled

1505 The pool has overflowed so batchcount number of objects is going to be freed to the global pool

1506 Update the number of available (avail) objects

1507-1508 Free a block of objects to the global cache

1509 Free the requested object and place it on the per CPU pool

1511 If the per CPU cache is not available, then free this object to the global pool

**Function:** `kmem_cache_free_one` (*mm/slab.c*)

```

1412 static inline void kmem_cache_free_one(kmem_cache_t *cachep, void *objp)
1413 {
1414     slab_t* slabp;
1415
1416     CHECK_PAGE(virt_to_page(objp));
1423     slabp = GET_PAGE_SLAB(virt_to_page(objp));
1424
1425 #if DEBUG
1426     if (cachep->flags & SLAB_DEBUG_INITIAL)
1431         cachep->ctor(objp, cachep,
1432                     SLAB_CTOR_CONSTRUCTOR|SLAB_CTOR_VERIFY);
1432
1433     if (cachep->flags & SLAB_RED_ZONE) {
1434         objp -= BYTES_PER_WORD;
1435         if (xchg((unsigned long *)objp, RED_MAGIC1) !=
1436             RED_MAGIC2)
1437             BUG();
1438         if (xchg((unsigned long *) (objp+cachep->objsize -
1439             BYTES_PER_WORD), RED_MAGIC1) !=
1440             RED_MAGIC2)
1441             BUG();
1442     }
1443     if (cachep->flags & SLAB_POISON)
1444         kmem_poison_obj(cachep, objp);
1445     if (kmem_extra_free_checks(cachep, slabp, objp))
1446         return;
1447 #endif
1448     {
1449         unsigned int objnr = (objp-slabp->s_mem)/cachep->objsize;
1450
1451         slab_bufctl(slabp)[objnr] = slabp->free;
1452         slabp->free = objnr;
1453     }
1454     STATS_DEC_ACTIVE(cachep);
1455
1456     {
1457         int inuse = slabp->inuse;
1458         if (unlikely(!--slabp->inuse)) {
1459             /* Was partial or full, now empty. */
1460             list_del(&slabp->list);
1461             list_add(&slabp->list, &cachep->slabs_free);
1462         } else if (unlikely(inuse == cachep->num)) {
1463             /* Was full. */

```

```

1465             list_del(&slabp->list);
1466             list_add(&slabp->list, &cachep->slabs_partial);
1467         }
1468     }
1469 }

```

1416 Make sure the page is a slab page

1423 Get the slab descriptor for the page

1425-1447 Debugging material. Discussed at end of section

1449 Calculate the index for the object been freed

1452 As this object is now free, update the bufctl to reflect that. See the companion document for seeing how to track free objects.

1454 If statistics are enabled, disable the number of active objects in the slab

1459-1462 If `inuse` reaches 0, the slab is free and is moved to the `slabs_free` list

1463-1466 If the number in use equals the number of objects in a slab, it is full so move it to the `slabs_full` list

1469 Return

1426-1431 If `SLAB_DEBUG_INITIAL` is set, the constructor is called to verify the object is in an initialised state

1433-1442 Verify the red marks at either end of the object are still there. This will check for writes beyond the boundaries of the object and for double frees

1443-1444 Poison the freed object with a known pattern

1445-1446 This function will confirm the object is a part of this slab and cache. It will then check the free list (bufctl) to make sure this is not a double free

**Function: free\_block** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function is only used in the SMP case when the per CPU cache gets too full. It is used to free a batch of objects in bulk

```

1479 static void free_block (kmem_cache_t* cachep, void** objpp, int len)
1480 {
1481     spin_lock(&cachep->spinlock);
1482     __free_block(cachep, objpp, len);
1483     spin_unlock(&cachep->spinlock);
1484 }

```

1479 The parameters are



`cachep` The cache that objects are been freed from

`objpp` Pointer to the first object to free

`len` The number of objects to free

1483 Acquire a lock to the cache descriptor

1484 Discussed in next section

1485 Release the lock

**Function:** `__free_block` (*mm/slab.c*)

This function is trivial. Starting with `objpp`, it will free `len` number of objects.

```

1472 static inline void __free_block (kmem_cache_t* cachep,
1473                                 void** objpp, int len)
1474 {
1475     for ( ; len > 0; len--, objpp++)
1476         kmem_cache_free_one(cachep, *objpp);
1477 }
```

## 4.3 Sizes Cache

**Function:** `kmem_cache_sizes_init` (*mm/slab.c*)

This function is responsible for creating pairs of caches for small memory buffers suitable for either normal or DMA memory.

```

436 void __init kmem_cache_sizes_init(void)
437 {
438     cache_sizes_t *sizes = cache_sizes;
439     char name[20];
440
441     if (num_physpages > (32 << 20) >> PAGE_SHIFT)
442         slab_break_gfp_order = BREAK_GFP_ORDER_HI;
443     do {
444         snprintf(name, sizeof(name), "size-%Zd",
445                 sizes->cs_size);
446         if (!(sizes->cs_cachep =
447             kmem_cache_create(name,
448                               sizes->cs_size,
449                               0, SLAB_HWCACHE_ALIGN,
450                               NULL, NULL))) {
451             BUG();
452         }
453     }
454     if (!(OFF_SLAB(sizes->cs_cachep))) {
```

```

461             offslab_limit = sizes->cs_size-sizeof(slab_t);
462             offslab_limit /= 2;
463         }
464         snprintf(name, sizeof(name), "size-%Zd(DMA)",
465                 sizes->cs_size);
465         sizes->cs_dmacachep = kmem_cache_create(name,
466                 sizes->cs_size, 0,
467                 SLAB_CACHE_DMA|SLAB_HWCACHE_ALIGN,
468                 NULL, NULL);
467         if (!sizes->cs_dmacachep)
468             BUG();
469         sizes++;
470     } while (sizes->cs_size);
471 }

```

438 Get a pointer to the `cache_sizes` array. See Section 4.3

439 The human readable name of the cache . Should be sized `CACHE_NAMELEN` which is defined to be 20 long

444-445 `slab_break_gfp_order` determines how many pages a slab may use unless 0 objects fit into the slab. It is statically initialised to `BREAK_GFP_ORDER_LO` (1). This check sees if more than 32MiB of memory is available and if it is, allow `BREAK_GFP_ORDER_HI` number of pages to be used because internal fragmentation is more acceptable when more memory is available.

446-470 Create two caches for each size of memory allocation needed

452 Store the human readable cache name in `name`

453-454 Create the cache, aligned to the L1 cache. See Section 4.0.1

460-463 Calculate the off-slab `bufctl` limit which determines the number of objects that can be stored in a cache when the slab descriptor is kept off-cache.

464 The human readable name for the cache for DMA use

465-466 Create the cache, aligned to the L1 cache and suitable for DMA user. See Section 4.0.1

467 if the cache failed to allocate, it is a bug. If memory is unavailable this early, the machine will not boot

469 Move to the next element in the `cache_sizes` array

470 The array is terminated with a 0 as the last element

### 4.3.1 **kmalloc**

With the existence of the sizes cache, the slab allocator is able to offer a new allocator function, `kmalloc` for use when small memory buffers are required. When a request is received, the appropriate sizes cache is selected and an object assigned from it. The call graph on Figure 4.9 is therefore very simple as all the hard work is in cache allocation (See Section 4.2.2)

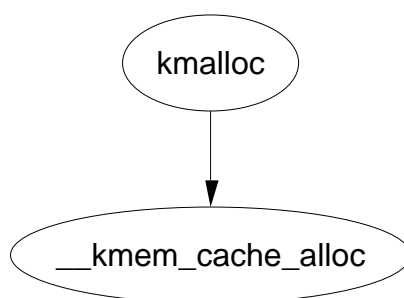


Figure 4.9: `kmalloc`

**Function:** `kmalloc` (*mm/slab.c*)

```

1553 void * kmalloc (size_t size, int flags)
1554 {
1555     cache_sizes_t *csizep = cache_sizes;
1556
1557     for (; csizep->cs_size; csizep++) {
1558         if (size > csizep->cs_size)
1559             continue;
1560         return __kmem_cache_alloc(flags & GFP_DMA ?
1561             csizep->cs_dmacachep :
1562             csizep->cs_cachep, flags);
1562     }
1563     return NULL;
1564 }
  
```

1555 `cache_sizes` is the array of caches for each size (See Section 4.3)

1557-1562 Starting with the smallest cache, examine the size of each cache until one large enough to satisfy the request is found

1560 If the allocation is for use with DMA, allocate an object from `cs_dmacachep` else use the `cs_cachep`

1563 If a sizes cache of sufficient size was not available or an object could not be allocated, return failure

### 4.3.2 kfree

Just as there is a `kmalloc()` function to allocate small memory objects for use, there is a `kfree` for freeing it. As with `kmalloc`, the real work takes place during object freeing (See Section 4.2.3) so the call graph in Figure 4.9 is very simple.

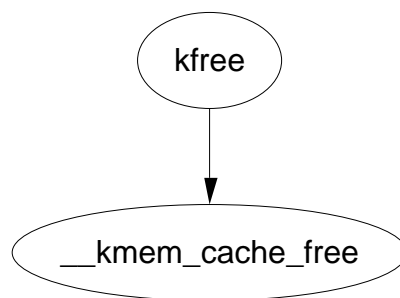


Figure 4.10: kfree

**Function:** `kfree` (*mm/slab.c*)

It is worth noting that the work this function does is almost identical to the function `kmem_cache_free()` with debugging enabled (See Section 4.2.3).

```

1595 void kfree (const void *objp)
1596 {
1597     kmem_cache_t *c;
1598     unsigned long flags;
1599
1600     if (!objp)
1601         return;
1602     local_irq_save(flags);
1603     CHECK_PAGE(virt_to_page(objp));
1604     c = GET_PAGE_CACHE(virt_to_page(objp));
1605     __kmem_cache_free(c, (void*)objp);
1606     local_irq_restore(flags);
1607 }
  
```

1600 Return if the pointer is NULL. This is possible if a caller used `kmalloc` and had a catch-all failure routine which called `kfree` immediately

1602 Disable interrupts

1603 Make sure the page this object is in is a slab page

1604 Get the cache this pointer belongs to (See Section 4.1)

1605 Free the memory object

1606 Re-enable interrupts

## 4.4 Per-CPU Object Cache

One of the tasks the slab allocator is dedicated to is improved hardware cache utilization. An aim of high performance computing in general is to use data on the same CPU for as long as possible. Linux achieves this by trying to keep objects in the same CPU cache with a Per-CPU object cache, called a `cpucache` for each CPU in the system.

When allocating or freeing objects, they are placed in the `cpucache`. When there is no objects free, a `batch` of objects is placed into the pool. When the pool gets too large, half of them are removed and placed in the global cache. This way the hardware cache will be used for as long as possible on the same CPU.

### 4.4.1 Describing the Per-CPU Object Cache

Each cache descriptor has a pointer to an array of `cpucaches`, described in the cache descriptor as

```
231         cpucache_t          *cpudata[NR_CPUS];
```

This structure is very simple

```
173 typedef struct cpucache_s {
174     unsigned int avail;
175     unsigned int limit;
176 } cpucache_t;
```

`avail` is the number of free objects available on this `cpucache`

`limit` is the total number of free objects that can exist

A helper macro `cc_data()` is provided to give the `cpucache` for a given cache and processor. It is defined as

```
180 #define cc_data(cachep) \
181     ((cachep)->cpudata[smp_processor_id()])
```

This will take a given cache descriptor (`cachep`) and return a pointer from the `cpucache` array (`cpudata`). The index needed is the ID of the current processor, `smp_processor_id()`.

Pointers to objects on the `cpucache` are placed immediately after the `cpucache_t` struct. This is very similar to how objects are stored after a slab descriptor illustrated in Section 4.1.2.

### 4.4.2 Adding/Removing Objects from the Per-CPU Cache

To prevent fragmentation, objects are always added or removed from the end of the array. To add an object (`obj`) to the CPU cache (`cc`), the following block of code is used

```
cc_entry(cc)[cc->avail++] = obj;
```

To remove an object

```
obj = cc_entry(cc)[--cc->avail];
```

`cc_entry()` is a helper macro which gives a pointer to the first object in the `cpucache`. It is defined as

```
178 #define cc_entry(cpucache) \
179     ((void **)(((cpucache_t*)(cpucache))+1))
```

This takes a pointer to a `cpucache`, increments the value by the size of the `cpucache_t` descriptor giving the first object in the cache.

### 4.4.3 Enabling Per-CPU Caches

When a cache is created, its CPU cache has to be enabled and memory allocated for it using `kmalloc`. The function `enable_cpucache` is responsible for deciding what size to make the cache and calling `kmem_tune_cpucache` to allocate memory for it.

Obviously a CPU cache cannot exist until after the various sizes caches have been enabled so a global variable `g_cpucache_up` is used to prevent `cpucache`'s been enabled before it is possible. The function `enable_all_cpucaches` cycles through all caches in the cache chain and enables their `cpucache`.

Once the CPU cache has been setup, it can be accessed without locking as a CPU will never access the wrong `cpucache` so it is guaranteed safe access to it.

**Function:** `enable_all_cpucaches` (*mm/slab.c*)

This function locks the cache chain and enables the `cpucache` for every cache. This is important after the `cache_cache` and `sizes cache` have been enabled.

```
1712 static void enable_all_cpucaches (void)
1713 {
1714     struct list_head* p;
1715
1716     down(&cache_chain_sem);
1717
1718     p = &cache_cache.next;
1719     do {
1720         kmem_cache_t* cachep = list_entry(p, kmem_cache_t, next);
1721
```

```

1722             enable_cpucache(cachep);
1723             p = cachep->next.next;
1724     } while (p != &cache_cache.next);
1725
1726     up(&cache_chain_sem);
1727 }

```

1716 Obtain the semaphore to the cache chain

1717 Get the first cache on the chain

1719-1724 Cycle through the whole chain

1720 Get a cache from the chain. This code will skip the first cache on the chain but `cache_cache` doesn't need a `cpucache` as it is so rarely used

1722 Enable the `cpucache`

1723 Move to the next cache on the chain

1724 Release the cache chain semaphore

**Function: `enable_cpucache`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function calculates what the size of a `cpucache` should be based on the size of the objects the cache contains before calling `kmem_tune_cpucache()` which does the actual allocation.

```

1691 static void enable_cpucache (kmem_cache_t *cachep)
1692 {
1693     int err;
1694     int limit;
1695
1696     if (cachep->objsize > PAGE_SIZE)
1697         return;
1698     if (cachep->objsize > 1024)
1699         limit = 60;
1700     else if (cachep->objsize > 256)
1701         limit = 124;
1702     else
1703         limit = 252;
1704
1705     err = kmem_tune_cpucache(cachep, limit, limit/2);
1706     if (err)
1707         printk(KERN_ERR
1708             "enable_cpucache failed for %s, error %d.\n",
1709             cachep->name, -err);
1710 }

```





```

1661             if (!ccnew)
1662                 goto oom;
1663             ccnew->limit = limit;
1664             ccnew->avail = 0;
1665             new.new[cpu_logical_map(i)] = ccnew;
1666         }
1667     }
1668     new.cachep = cachep;
1669     spin_lock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
1670     cachep->batchcount = batchcount;
1671     spin_unlock_irq(&cachep->spinlock);
1672
1673     smp_call_function_all_cpus(do_ccupdate_local, (void *)&new);
1674
1675     for (i = 0; i < smp_num_cpus; i++) {
1676         cpucache_t* ccold = new.new[cpu_logical_map(i)];
1677         if (!ccold)
1678             continue;
1679         local_irq_disable();
1680         free_block(cachep, cc_entry(ccold), ccold->avail);
1681         local_irq_enable();
1682         kfree(ccold);
1683     }
1684     return 0;
1685 oom:
1686     for (i--; i >= 0; i--)
1687         kfree(new.new[cpu_logical_map(i)]);
1688     return -ENOMEM;
1689 }

```

1637 The parameters of the function are

cachep The cache this cpucache is been allocated for

limit The total number of objects that can exist in the cpucache

batchcount The number of objects to allocate in one batch when the cpucache is empty

1645 The number of objects in the cache cannot be negative

1647 A negative number of objects cannot be allocated in batch

1649 A batch of objects greater than the limit cannot be allocated

1651 A batchcount must be provided if the limit is positive

1654 Zero fill the update struct

- 1655 If a limit is provided, allocate memory for the cpucache
- 1656-1666 For every CPU, allocate a cpucache
- 1659 The amount of memory needed is `limit` number of pointers and the size of the cpucache descriptor
- 1661 If out of memory, clean up and exit
- 1663-1664 Fill in the fields for the cpucache descriptor
- 1665 Fill in the information for `ccupdate_update_t` struct
- 1668 Tell the `ccupdate_update_t` struct what cache is been updated
- 1669-1671 Acquire an interrupt safe lock to the cache descriptor and set its batch-count
- 1673 Get each CPU to update its cpucache information for itself. This swaps the old cpucaches in the cache descriptor with the new ones in `new`
- 1675-1683 After `smp_call_function_all_cpus()`, the old cpucaches are in `new`. This block of code cycles through them all, frees any objects in them and deletes the old cpucache
- 1684 Return success
- 1686 In the event there is no memory, delete all cpucaches that have been allocated up until this point and return failure

#### 4.4.4 Updating Per-CPU Information

When the per-cpu caches have been created or changed, each CPU has to be told about it. It is not sufficient to change all the values in the cache descriptor as that would lead to cache coherency issues and spinlocks would have to be used to protect the cpucache's. Instead a `ccupdate_t` struct is populated with all the information each CPU needs and each CPU swaps the new data with the old information in the cache descriptor. The struct for storing the new cpucache information is defined as follows

```

868 typedef struct ccupdate_struct_s
869 {
870     kmem_cache_t *cachep;
871     cpucache_t *new[NR_CPUS];
872 } ccupdate_struct_t;

```

The `cachep` is the cache been updated and the array `new` is of the cpucache descriptors for each CPU on the system. The function `smp_function_all_cpus()` is used to get each CPU to call the `do_ccupdate_local()` function which swaps the information from `ccupdate_struct_t` with the information in the cache descriptor.

Once the information has been swapped, the old data can be deleted.

**Function: `smp_function_all_cpus`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This calls the function `func()` for all CPU's. In the context of the slab allocator, the function is `do_ccupdate_local()` and the argument is `ccupdate_struct_t`.

```
859 static void smp_call_function_all_cpus(void (*func) (void *arg),
                                         void *arg)
860 {
861     local_irq_disable();
862     func(arg);
863     local_irq_enable();
864
865     if (smp_call_function(func, arg, 1, 1))
866         BUG();
867 }
```

861-863 Disable interrupts locally and call the function for this CPU

865 For all other CPU's, call the function. `smp_call_function()` is an architecture specific function and will not be discussed further here

**Function: `do_ccupdate_local`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function swaps the cpucache information in the cache descriptor with the information in `info` for this CPU.

```
874 static void do_ccupdate_local(void *info)
875 {
876     ccupdate_struct_t *new = (ccupdate_struct_t *)info;
877     cpucache_t *old = cc_data(new->cachep);
878
879     cc_data(new->cachep) = new->new[smp_processor_id()];
880     new->new[smp_processor_id()] = old;
881 }
```

876 The parameter passed in is a pointer to the `ccupdate_struct_t` passed to `smp_call_function_all_cpus()`

877 Part of the `ccupdate_struct_t` is a pointer to the cache this cpucache belongs to. `cc_data()` returns the `cpucache_t` for this processor

879 Place the new cpucache in cache descriptor. `cc_data()` returns the pointer to the cpucache for this CPU.

880 Replace the pointer in `new` with the old cpucache so it can be deleted later by the caller of `smp_call_function_all_cpus()`, `kmem_tune_cpucache()` for example

### 4.4.5 Draining a Per-CPU Cache

When a cache is been shrunk, its first step is to drain the cpucaches of any objects they might have. This is so the slab allocator will have a clearer view of what slabs can be freed or not. This is important because if just one object in a slab is placed in a Per-CPU cache, that whole slab cannot be freed. If the system is tight on memory, saving a few milliseconds on allocations is the least of its trouble.

**Function:** `drain_cpu_caches` (*mm/slab.c*)

```

885 static void drain_cpu_caches(kmem_cache_t *cachep)
886 {
887     ccupdate_struct_t new;
888     int i;
889
890     memset(&new.new,0,sizeof(new.new));
891
892     new.cachep = cachep;
893
894     down(&cache_chain_sem);
895     smp_call_function_all_cpus(do_ccupdate_local, (void *)&new);
896
897     for (i = 0; i < smp_num_cpus; i++) {
898         cpucache_t* ccold = new.new[cpu_logical_map(i)];
899         if (!ccold || (ccold->avail == 0))
900             continue;
901         local_irq_disable();
902         free_block(cachep, cc_entry(ccold), ccold->avail);
903         local_irq_enable();
904         ccold->avail = 0;
905     }
906     smp_call_function_all_cpus(do_ccupdate_local, (void *)&new);
907     up(&cache_chain_sem);
908 }
```

890 Blank the update structure as it is going to be clearing all data

892 Set `new.cachep` to `cachep` so that `smp_call_function_all_cpus()` knows what cache it is affecting

894 Acquire the cache descriptor semaphore

895 `do_ccupdate_local` swaps the `cpucache_t` information in the cache descriptor with the ones in `new` so they can be altered here

897-905 For each CPU in the system ....

898 Get the cpucache descriptor for this CPU

- 899 If the structure does not exist for some reason or there is no objects available in it, move to the next CPU
- 901 Disable interrupts on this processor. It is possible an allocation from an interrupt handler elsewhere would try to access the per CPU cache
- 902 Free the block of objects (See Section 4.2.3)
- 903 Re-enable interrupts
- 904 Show that no objects are available
- 906 The information for each CPU has been updated so call `do_ccupdate_local()` for each CPU to put the information back into the cache descriptor
- 907 Release the semaphore for the cache chain

## 4.5 Slab Allocator Initialisation

Here we will describe the slab allocator initialises itself. When the slab allocator creates a new cache, it allocates the `kmem_cache_t` from the `cache_cache` or `kmem_cache` cache. This is an obvious chicken and egg problem so the `cache_cache` has to be statically initialised as

```

357 static kmem_cache_t cache_cache = {
358     slabs_full:    LIST_HEAD_INIT(cache_cache.slabs_full),
359     slabs_partial: LIST_HEAD_INIT(cache_cache.slabs_partial),
360     slabs_free:    LIST_HEAD_INIT(cache_cache.slabs_free),
361     objsize:       sizeof(kmem_cache_t),
362     flags:         SLAB_NO_REAP,
363     spinlock:      SPIN_LOCK_UNLOCKED,
364     colour_off:    L1_CACHE_BYTES,
365     name:          "kmem_cache",
366 };

```

358-360 Initialise the three lists as empty lists

361 The size of each object is the size of a cache descriptor

362 The creation and deleting of caches is extremely rare so do not consider it for reaping ever

363 Initialise the spinlock unlocked

364 Align the objects to the L1 cache

365 The human readable name

That statically defines all the fields that can be calculated at compile time. To initialise the rest of the struct, `kmem_cache_init()` is called from `start_kernel()`.

**Function: `kmem_cache_init`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This function will

- Initialise the cache chain linked list
- Initialise a mutex for accessing the cache chain
- Calculate the `cache_cache` colour

```

416 void __init kmem_cache_init(void)
417 {
418     size_t left_over;
419
420     init_MUTEX(&cache_chain_sem);
421     INIT_LIST_HEAD(&cache_chain);
422
423     kmem_cache_estimate(0, cache_cache.objsize, 0,
424                       &left_over, &cache_cache.num);
425     if (!cache_cache.num)
426         BUG();
427
428     cache_cache.colour = left_over/cache_cache.colour_off;
429     cache_cache.colour_next = 0;
430 }
```

420 Initialise the semaphore for access the cache chain

421 Initialise the cache chain linked list

423 This estimates the number of objects and amount of bytes wasted. See Section 4.0.2

425 If even one `kmem_cache_t` cannot be stored in a page, there is something seriously wrong

428 `colour` is the number of different cache lines that can be used while still keeping L1 cache alignment

429 `colour_next` indicates which line to use next. Start at 0

## 4.6 Interfacing with the Buddy Allocator

**Function: `kmem_getpages`** (*mm/slab.c*)

This allocates pages for the slab allocator

```

486 static inline void * kmem_getpages (kmem_cache_t *cachep, unsigned long
flags)
487 {
488     void    *addr;
495     flags |= cachep->gfpflags;
496     addr = (void*) __get_free_pages(flags, cachep->gfporder);
503     return addr;
504 }

```

495 Whatever flags were requested for the allocation, append the cache flags to it. The only flag it may append is GFP\_DMA if the cache requires DMA memory

496 Call the buddy allocator (See Section 2.3)

503 Return the pages or NULL if it failed

**Function: kmem\_freepages** (*mm/slab.c*)

This frees pages for the slab allocator. Before it calls the buddy allocator API, it will remove the PG\_slab bit from the page flags

```

507 static inline void kmem_freepages (kmem_cache_t *cachep, void *addr)
508 {
509     unsigned long i = (1<<cachep->gfporder);
510     struct page *page = virt_to_page(addr);
511
517     while (i--) {
518         PageClearSlab(page);
519         page++;
520     }
521     free_pages((unsigned long)addr, cachep->gfporder);
522 }

```

509 Retrieve the order used for the original allocation

510 Get the struct page for the address

517-520 Clear the PG\_slab bit on each page

521 Call the buddy allocator (See Section 2.4)

# Chapter 5

## Process Address Space

### 5.1 Managing the Address Space

### 5.2 Process Memory Descriptors

The process address space is described by the `mm_struct` defined in `include/linux/sched.h`



```

210 struct mm_struct {
211     struct vm_area_struct * mmap;
212     rb_root_t mm_rb;
213     struct vm_area_struct * mmap_cache;
214     pgd_t * pgd;
215     atomic_t mm_users;
216     atomic_t mm_count;
217     int map_count;
218     struct rw_semaphore mmap_sem;
219     spinlock_t page_table_lock;
220
221     struct list_head mmlist;
222
223     unsigned long start_code, end_code, start_data, end_data;
224     unsigned long start_brk, brk, start_stack;
225     unsigned long arg_start, arg_end, env_start, env_end;
226     unsigned long rss, total_vm, locked_vm;
227     unsigned long def_flags;
228     unsigned long cpu_vm_mask;
229     unsigned long swap_address;
230
231     unsigned dumpable:1;
232
233     /* Architecture-specific MM context */
234     mm_context_t context;
235 };
236
237
238
239

```

**mmap** The head of a linked list of all VMA regions in the address space

**mm\_rb** The VMA's are arranged in a linked list and in a red-black tree. This is the root of the tree

**pgd** The Page Global Directory for this process

**mm\_users** Count of the number of threads accessing an mm. A cloned thread will up this count to make sure an mm\_struct is not destroyed early. The `swap_out()` code will increment this count when swapping out portions of the mm

**mm\_count** A reference count to the mm. This is important for lazy TLB switches where a task may be using one mm\_struct temporarily

**map\_count** Number of VMA's in use

**mmap\_sem** This is a long lived lock which protects the vma list for readers and writers. As the taker could run for so long, a spinlock is inappropriate. A reader of the list takes this semaphore with `down_read()`. If they need to write, it must be taken with `down_write()` and the `page_table_lock` must be taken as well

**page\_table\_lock** This protects a number of things. It protects the page tables, the rss count and the vma from modification

**mmlist** All mm's are linked together via this field

**start\_code, end\_code** The start and end address of the code section

**start\_data, end\_data** The start and end address of the data section

**start\_brk, end\_brk** The start and end address of the heap

**arg\_start, arg\_end** The start and end address of command line arguments

**env\_start, env\_end** The start and end address of environment variables

**rss** Resident Set Size, the number of resident pages for this process

**total\_vm** The total memory space occupied by all vma regions in the process

**locked\_vm** The amount of memory locked with `mlock` by the process

**def\_flags** It has only one possible value, `VM_LOCKED`. It is used to determine if all future mappings are locked by default or not

**cpu\_vm\_mask** A bitmask representing all possible CPU's in an SMP system. The mask is used with IPI to determine if a processor should execute a particular function or not. This is important during TLB flush for each CPU for example

**swap\_address** Used by the `vmscan` code to record the last address that was swapped from

**dumpable** Set by `prctl()`, this flag is important only to `ptrace`

**context** Architecture specific MMU context

## 5.2.1 Allocating a Descriptor

Two functions are provided to allocate. To be slightly confusing, they are essentially the same. `allocate_mm()` will allocate a `mm_struct` from the slab allocator. `alloc_mm()` will allocate and call the function `mm_init()` to initialise it.

**Function: `allocate_mm`** (*kernel/fork.c*)

```
226 #define allocate_mm()    (kmem_cache_alloc(mm_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL))
```

```
226 Allocate a mm_struct from the slab allocator
```

**Function:** `mm_alloc` (*kernel/fork.c*)

```

247 struct mm_struct * mm_alloc(void)
248 {
249     struct mm_struct * mm;
250
251     mm = allocate_mm();
252     if (mm) {
253         memset(mm, 0, sizeof(*mm));
254         return mm_init(mm);
255     }
256     return NULL;
257 }

```

251 Allocate a `mm_struct` from the slab allocator

253 Zero out all contents of the struct

254 Perform basic initialisation

## 5.2.2 Initialising a Descriptor

The initial `mm_struct` in the system is called `init_mm` and is statically initialised at compile time using the macro `INIT_MM`.

```

242 #define INIT_MM(name) \
243 { \
244     mm_rb:          RB_ROOT, \
245     pgd:            swapper_pg_dir, \
246     mm_users:       ATOMIC_INIT(2), \
247     mm_count:       ATOMIC_INIT(1), \
248     mmap_sem:       __RWSEM_INITIALIZER(name.mmap_sem), \
249     page_table_lock: SPIN_LOCK_UNLOCKED, \
250     mmlist:         LIST_HEAD_INIT(name.mmlist), \
251 }

```

Once it is established, new `mm_struct`'s are copies of their parent `mm_struct` copied using `copy_mm` with the process specific fields initialised with `init_mm()`.

**Function:** `copy_mm` (*kernel/fork.c*)

This function makes a copy of the `mm_struct` for the given task. This is only called from `do_fork()` after a new process has been created and needs its own `mm_struct`.

```

314 static int copy_mm(unsigned long clone_flags, struct task_struct * tsk)
315 {
316     struct mm_struct * mm, *oldmm;

```

```
317         int retval;
318
319         tsk->min_flt = tsk->maj_flt = 0;
320         tsk->cmin_flt = tsk->cmaj_flt = 0;
321         tsk->nswap = tsk->cnswap = 0;
322
323         tsk->mm = NULL;
324         tsk->active_mm = NULL;
325
326         /*
327          * Are we cloning a kernel thread?
328          *
329          * We need to steal a active VM for that..
330          */
331         oldmm = current->mm;
332         if (!oldmm)
333             return 0;
334
335         if (clone_flags & CLONE_VM) {
336             atomic_inc(&oldmm->mm_users);
337             mm = oldmm;
338             goto good_mm;
339         }
340
341         retval = -ENOMEM;
342         mm = allocate_mm();
343         if (!mm)
344             goto fail_nomem;
345
346         /* Copy the current MM stuff.. */
347         memcpy(mm, oldmm, sizeof(*mm));
348         if (!mm_init(mm))
349             goto fail_nomem;
350
351         if (init_new_context(tsk, mm))
352             goto free_pt;
353
354         down_write(&oldmm->mmap_sem);
355         retval = dup_mmap(mm);
356         up_write(&oldmm->mmap_sem);
357
358         if (retval)
359             goto free_pt;
360
361         /*
```

```

362         * child gets a private LDT (if there was an LDT in the parent)
363         */
364         copy_segments(tsk, mm);
365
366 good_mm:
367         tsk->mm = mm;
368         tsk->active_mm = mm;
369         return 0;
370
371 free_pt:
372         mmput(mm);
373 fail_nomem:
374         return retval;
375 }

```

314 The parameters are the flags passed for clone and the task that is creating a copy of the `mm_struct`

319-324 Initialise the `task_struct` fields related to memory management

331 Borrow the mm of the current running process to copy from

332 A kernel thread has no mm so it can return immediately

335-340 If the `CLONE_VM` flag is set, the child process is to share the mm with the parent process. This is required by users like pthreads. The `mm_users` field is incremented so the mm is not destroyed prematurely later. The `goto_mm` label sets the mm and `active_mm` and returns success

342 Allocate a new mm

347-349 Copy the parent mm and initialise the process specific mm fields with `init_mm()`

351-352 Initialise the MMU context for architectures that do not automatically manage their MMU

354-356 Call `dup_mmap()`. `dup_mmap` is responsible for copying all the VMA's regions in use by the parent process

358 `dup_mmap` returns 0 on success. If it failed, the label `free_pt` will call `mmput` which decrements the use count of the mm

365 This copies the LDT for the new process based on the parent process

367-369 Set the new mm, `active_mm` and return success

**Function: mm\_init** (*kernel/fork.c*)

This function initialises process specific mm fields.

```

229 static struct mm_struct * mm_init(struct mm_struct * mm)
230 {
231     atomic_set(&mm->mm_users, 1);
232     atomic_set(&mm->mm_count, 1);
233     init_rwsem(&mm->mmap_sem);
234     mm->page_table_lock = SPIN_LOCK_UNLOCKED;
235     mm->pgd = pgd_alloc(mm);
236     mm->def_flags = 0;
237     if (mm->pgd)
238         return mm;
239     free_mm(mm);
240     return NULL;
241 }
```

231 Set the number of users to 1

232 Set the reference count of the mm to 1

233 Initialise the semaphore protecting the VMA list

234 Initialise the spinlock protecting write access to it

235 Allocate a new PGD for the struct

236 By default, pages used by the process are not locked in memory

237 If a PGD exists, return the initialised struct

239 Initialisation failed, delete the mm\_struct and return

**5.2.3 Destroying a Descriptor**

A new user to an mm increments the usage could with a simple call,

```
atomic_int(&mm->mm_users);
```

It is decremented with a call to `mmaput()`. If the count reaches zero, all the mapped regions with `exit_mmap()` and the mm destroyed with `mm_drop()`.

**Function: `mmput`** (*kernel/fork.c*)

```

275 void mmput(struct mm_struct *mm)
276 {
277     if (atomic_dec_and_lock(&mm->mm_users, &mmlist_lock)) {
278         extern struct mm_struct *swap_mm;
279         if (swap_mm == mm)
280             swap_mm = list_entry(mm->mmlist.next,
                                   struct mm_struct, mmlist);
281         list_del(&mm->mmlist);
282         mmlist_nr--;
283         spin_unlock(&mmlist_lock);
284         exit_mmap(mm);
285         mmdrop(mm);
286     }
287 }

```

277 Atomically decrement the `mm_users` field while holding the `mmlist_lock` lock. Return with the lock held if the count reaches zero

278-285 If the usage count reaches zero, the mm and associated structures need to be removed

278-280 The `swap_mm` is the last mm that was swapped out by the vmscan code. If the current process was the last mm swapped, move to the next entry in the list

281 Remove this mm from the list

282-283 Reduce the count of mm's in the list and release the mmlist lock

284 Remove all associated mappings

285 Delete the mm

**Function: `mmdrop`** (*include/linux/sched.h*)

```

767 static inline void mmdrop(struct mm_struct * mm)
768 {
769     if (atomic_dec_and_test(&mm->mm_count))
770         __mmdrop(mm);
771 }

```

769 Atomically decrement the reference count. The reference count could be higher if the mm was been used by lazy tlb switching tasks

770 If the reference count reaches zero, call `__mmdrop()`

**Function:** `__mmdrop` (*kernel/fork.c*)

```

264 inline void __mmdrop(struct mm_struct *mm)
265 {
266     BUG_ON(mm == &init_mm);
267     pgd_free(mm->pgd);
268     destroy_context(mm);
269     free_mm(mm);
270 }

```

266 Make sure the `init_mm` is not destroyed

267 Delete the PGD entry

268 Delete the LDT

269 Call `kmem_cache_free` for the mm freeing it with the slab allocator

## 5.3 Memory Regions

```

44 struct vm_area_struct {
45     struct mm_struct * vm_mm;
46     unsigned long vm_start;
47     unsigned long vm_end;
48
49     /* linked list of VM areas per task, sorted by address */
50     struct vm_area_struct *vm_next;
51
52
53     pgprot_t vm_page_prot;
54     unsigned long vm_flags;
55
56     rb_node_t vm_rb;
57
58
59     struct vm_area_struct *vm_next_share;
60     struct vm_area_struct **vm_pprev_share;
61
62
63     /* Function pointers to deal with this struct. */
64     struct vm_operations_struct * vm_ops;
65
66
67     /* Information about our backing store: */
68     unsigned long vm_pgoff;
69     struct file * vm_file;
70     unsigned long vm_raend;
71     void * vm_private_data;
72 };

```



- vm\_mm** The `mm_struct` this VMA belongs to
- vm\_start** The starting address
- vm\_end** The end address
- vm\_next** All the VMA's in an address space are linked together in an address ordered linked list with this field
- vm\_page\_prot** The protection flags for all pages in this VMA. See the companion document for a full list of flags
- vm\_rb** As well as been in a linked list, all the VMA's are stored on a red-black tree for fast lookups
- vm\_next\_share** Shared VMA regions such as shared library mappings are linked together with this field
- vm\_pprev\_share** The complement to `vm_next_share`
- vm\_ops** The `vm_ops` field contains functions pointers for open,close and nopage. These are needed for syncing with information from the disk
- vm\_pgoff** This is the page aligned offset within a file that is mmap'ed
- vm\_file** The struct file pointer to the file been mapped
- vm\_raend** This is the end address of a readahead window. When a fault occurs, a readahead window will page in a number of pages after the fault address. This field records how far to read ahead
- vm\_private\_data** Used by some device drivers to store private information. Not of concern to the memory manager

As mentioned, all the regions are linked together on a linked list ordered by address. When searching for a free area, it is a simple matter of traversing the list. A frequent operation is to search for the VMA for a particular address, during page faulting for example. In this case, the Red-Black tree is traversed as it has  $O(\log N)$  search time on average.

In the event the region is backed by a file, the `vm_file` leads to an associated `address_space`. The struct contains information of relevance to the filesystem such as the number of dirty pages which must be flushed to disk. It is defined as follows in `include/linux/fs.h`

```

400 struct address_space {
401     struct list_head    clean_pages;
402     struct list_head    dirty_pages;
403     struct list_head    locked_pages;
404     unsigned long       nrpages;
405     struct address_space_operations *a_ops;
406     struct inode        *host;
407     struct vm_area_struct *i_mmap;
408     struct vm_area_struct *i_mmap_shared;
409     spinlock_t          i_shared_lock;
410     int                 gfp_mask;
411 };

```

`clean_pages` A list of clean pages which do not have to be synchronized with the disk

`dirty_pages` Pages that the process has touched and need to be sync-ed

`locked_pages` The number of pages locked in memory

`nrpages` Number of resident pages in use by the address space

`a_ops` A struct of function pointers within the filesystem

`host` The host inode the file belongs to

`i_mmap` A pointer to the vma the address space is part of

`i_mmap_shared` A pointer to the next VMA which shares this address space

`i_shared_lock` A spinlock to protect this structure

`gfp_mask` The mask to use when calling `__alloc_pages()` for new pages

Periodically the memory manager will need to flush information to disk. The memory manager doesn't know and doesn't care how information is written to disk, so the `a_ops` struct is used to call the relevant functions. It is defined as follows in `include/linux/fs.h`

```

382 struct address_space_operations {
383     int (*writepage)(struct page *);
384     int (*readpage)(struct file *, struct page *);
385     int (*sync_page)(struct page *);
386     /*
387      * ext3 requires that a successful prepare_write()
388      * call be followed
389      * by a commit_write() call - they must be balanced
390      */
391     int (*prepare_write)(struct file *, struct page *,
392                          unsigned, unsigned);
393     int (*commit_write)(struct file *, struct page *,
394                        unsigned, unsigned);
395     /* Unfortunately this kludge is needed for FIBMAP.
396      * Don't use it */
397     int (*bmap)(struct address_space *, long);
398     int (*flushpage)(struct page *, unsigned long);
399     int (*releasepage)(struct page *, int);
400 #define KERNEL_HAS_O_DIRECT
401     int (*direct_IO)(int, struct inode *, struct kiobuf *,
402                     unsigned long, int);
403 };

```

**writepage** Write a page to disk. The offset within the file to write to is stored within the page struct. It is up to the filesystem specific code to find the block. See `buffer.c:block_write_full_page()`

**readpage** Read a page from disk. See `buffer.c:block_read_full_page()`

**sync\_page** Sync a dirty page with disk. See `buffer.c:block_sync_page()`

**prepare\_write** This is called before data is copied from userspace into a page that will be written to disk. With a journaled filesystem, this ensures the filesystem log is up to date. With normal filesystems, it makes sure the needed buffer pages are allocated. See `buffer.c:block_prepare_write()`

**commit\_write** After the data has been copied from userspace, this function is called to commit the information to disk. See `buffer.c:block_commit_write()`

**bmap** Maps a block so raw IO can be performed. Only of concern to the filesystem specific code.

**flushpage** This makes sure there is no IO pending on a page before releasing it. See `buffer.c:discard_bh_page()`

**releasepage** This tries to flush all the buffers associated with a page before freeing the page itself. See `try_to_free_buffers()`

### 5.3.1 Creating A Memory Region

The system call `mmap()` is provided for creating new memory regions within a process. For the x86, the function is called `sys_mmap2` and is responsible for performing basic checks before calling `do_mmap_pgoff` which is the prime function for creating new areas for all architectures.

The two high functions above `do_mmap_pgoff()` are essentially sanity checkers. They ensure the mapping size of page aligned if necessary, clears invalid flags, looks up the `struct file` for the given file descriptor and acquires the `mmap_sem` semaphore.

**Function: `do_mmap_pgoff`** (*mm/mmap.c*)

This function is very large and so is broken up into a number of sections. Broadly speaking the sections are

- Call the filesystem specific `mmap` function
- Sanity check the parameters
- Find a linear address space for the memory mapping
- Calculate the VM flags and check them against the file access permissions
- If an old area exists where the mapping is to take place, fix it up so it is suitable for the new mapping
- Allocate a `vm_area_struct` from the slab allocator and fill in its entries
- Link in the new VMA
- Update statistics and exit

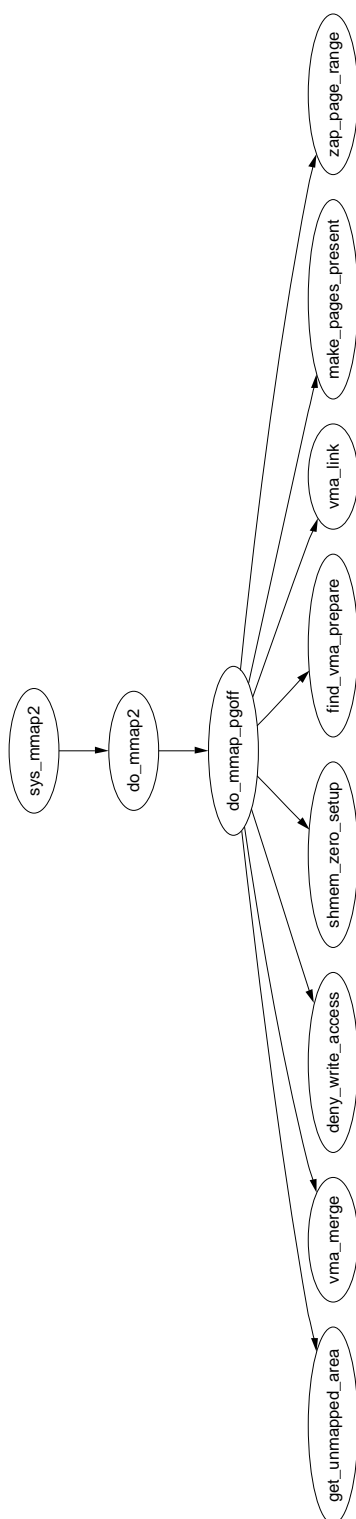


Figure 5.1: sys\_mmap2

```

393 unsigned long do_mmap_pgoff(struct file * file, unsigned long addr,
                               unsigned long len, unsigned long prot,
394                               unsigned long flags, unsigned long pgoff)
395 {
396     struct mm_struct * mm = current->mm;
397     struct vm_area_struct * vma, * prev;
398     unsigned int vm_flags;

```

393 The parameters which correspond directly to the parameters to the mmap system call are

`file` the struct file to mmap if this is a file backed mapping

`addr` the requested address to map

`len` the length in bytes to mmap

`prot` is the permissions on the area

`flags` are the flags for the mapping

`pgoff` is the offset within the file to begin the mmap at

403-404 If a file or device is been mapped, make sure a filesystem or device specific mmap function is provided. For most filesystems, this is `generic_file_mmap()`

406-407 Make sure a zero length mmap is not requested

409 Ensure that it is possible to map the requested area. The limit on the x86 is `PAGE_OFFSET` or 3GiB

413-414 Ensure the mapping will not overflow the end of the largest possible file

417-488 Only `max_map_count` are allowed. By default this value is `DEFAULT_MAX_MAP_COUNT` or 65536 mappings

```

420         /* Obtain the address to map to. we verify (or select) it and
421          * ensure that it represents a valid section of the address space.
422          */
423         addr = get_unmapped_area(file, addr, len, pgoff, flags);
424         if (addr & ~PAGE_MASK)
425             return addr;
426

```

423 After basic sanity checks, this function will call the device or file specific `get_unmapped_area` function. If a device specific one is unavailable, `arch_get_unmapped_area` is called. This function is discussed in Section 5.3.3

```
427     /* Do simple checking here so the lower-level routines won't have
428     * to. we assume access permissions have been handled by the open
429     * of the memory object, so we don't do any here.
430     */
431     vm_flags = calc_vm_flags(prot,flags) | mm->def_flags
                | VM_MAYREAD | VM_MAYWRITE | VM_MAYEXEC;
432
433     /* mlock MCL_FUTURE? */
434     if (vm_flags & VM_LOCKED) {
435         unsigned long locked = mm->locked_vm << PAGE_SHIFT;
436         locked += len;
437         if (locked > current->rlim[RLIMIT_MEMLOCK].rlim_cur)
438             return -EAGAIN;
439     }
440
```

431 `calc_vm_flags()` translates the `prot` and `flags` from userspace and translates them to their `VM_` equivalents

434-438 Check if it has been requested that all future mappings be locked in memory. If yes, make sure the process isn't locking more memory than it is allowed to. If it is, return `-EAGAIN`

```
441     if (file) {
442         switch (flags & MAP_TYPE) {
443             case MAP_SHARED:
444                 if ((prot & PROT_WRITE) &&
445                     !(file->f_mode & FMODE_WRITE))
446                     return -EACCES;
447
448                 /* Make sure we don't allow writing to
449                  * an append-only file.. */
450                 if (IS_APPEND(file->f_dentry->d_inode) &&
451                     (file->f_mode & FMODE_WRITE))
452                     return -EACCES;
453
454                 /* make sure there are no mandatory
455                  * locks on the file. */
456                 if (locks_verify_locked(file->f_dentry->d_inode))
457                     return -EAGAIN;
458
459                 vm_flags |= VM_SHARED | VM_MAYSHARE;
460                 if (!(file->f_mode & FMODE_WRITE))
461                     vm_flags &= ~(VM_MAYWRITE | VM_SHARED);
462
463                 /* fall through */
464             case MAP_PRIVATE:
465                 if (!(file->f_mode & FMODE_READ))
466                     return -EACCES;
467                 break;
468             default:
469                 return -EINVAL;
470         }
471     } else {
472         vm_flags |= VM_SHARED | VM_MAYSHARE;
473         switch (flags & MAP_TYPE) {
474             default:
475                 return -EINVAL;
476             case MAP_PRIVATE:
477                 vm_flags &= ~(VM_SHARED | VM_MAYSHARE);
478                 /* fall through */
479             case MAP_SHARED:
480                 break;
481         }
482     }
483 }
```



441-468 If a file is been memory mapped, check the files access permissions

444-445 If write access is requested, make sure the file is opened for write

448-449 Similarly, if the file is opened for append, make sure it cannot be written to. It is unclear why it is not the prot field that is checked here

451 If the file is mandatory locked, return EAGAIN so the caller will try a second type

455-457 Fix up the flags to be consistent with the file flags

461-462 Make sure the file can be read before mmaping it

469-479 If the file is been mapped for anonymous use, fix up the flags if the requested mapping is MAP\_PRIVATE to make sure the flags are consistent

```

480
481     /* Clear old maps */
482 munmap_back:
483     vma = find_vma_prepare(mm, addr, &prev, &rb_link, &rb_parent);
484     if (vma && vma->vm_start < addr + len) {
485         if (do_munmap(mm, addr, len))
486             return -ENOMEM;
487         goto munmap_back;
488     }
489
490     /* Check against address space limit. */
491     if ((mm->total_vm << PAGE_SHIFT) + len
492         > current->rlim[RLIMIT_AS].rlim_cur)
493         return -ENOMEM;
494
495     /* Private writable mapping? Check memory availability.. */
496     if ((vm_flags & (VM_SHARED | VM_WRITE)) == VM_WRITE &&
497         !(flags & MAP_NORESERVE) &&
498         !vm_enough_memory(len >> PAGE_SHIFT))
499         return -ENOMEM;
500
501     /* Can we just expand an old anonymous mapping? */
502     if (!file && !(vm_flags & VM_SHARED) && rb_parent)
503         if (vma_merge(mm, prev, rb_parent, addr, addr + len,
504             vm_flags))
505             goto out;

```

- 483 This function steps through the RB tree for the vma corresponding to a given address
- 484-486 If a vma was found and it is part of the new mapping, remove the old mapping as the new one will cover both
- 491-493 Make sure the new mapping will not exceed the total VM a process is allowed to have. It is unclear why this check is not made earlier
- 496-499 If the caller does not specifically request that free space is not checked with `MAP_NORESERVE` and it is a private mapping, make sure enough memory is available to satisfy the mapping under current conditions
- 502-504 If two adjacent anonymous memory mappings can be treated as one, expand an old mapping rather than creating a new one

```
506     /* Determine the object being mapped and call the appropriate
507     * specific mapper. the address has already been validated, but
508     * not unmapped, but the maps are removed from the list.
509     */
510     vma = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
511     if (!vma)
512         return -ENOMEM;
513
514     vma->vm_mm = mm;
515     vma->vm_start = addr;
516     vma->vm_end = addr + len;
517     vma->vm_flags = vm_flags;
518     vma->vm_page_prot = protection_map[vm_flags & 0x0f];
519     vma->vm_ops = NULL;
520     vma->vm_pgoff = pgoff;
521     vma->vm_file = NULL;
522     vma->vm_private_data = NULL;
523     vma->vm_raend = 0;
524
525     if (file) {
526         error = -EINVAL;
527         if (vm_flags & (VM_GROWSDOWN|VM_GROWSUP))
528             goto free_vma;
529         if (vm_flags & VM_DENYWRITE) {
530             error = deny_write_access(file);
531             if (error)
532                 goto free_vma;
533             correct_wcount = 1;
534         }
535         vma->vm_file = file;
536         get_file(file);
537         error = file->f_op->mmap(file, vma);
538         if (error)
539             goto unmap_and_free_vma;
540     } else if (flags & MAP_SHARED) {
541         error = shmem_zero_setup(vma);
542         if (error)
543             goto free_vma;
544     }
545
```

510 Allocate a `vm_area_struct` from the slab allocator

514-523 Fill in the basic `vm_area_struct` fields

525-540 Fill in the file related fields if this is a file been mapped

527-528 These are both invalid flags for a file mapping so free the `vm_area_struct` and return

529-534 This flag is cleared by the system call `mmap` so it is unclear why the check is still made. Historically, an `ETXTBUSY` signal was sent to the calling process if the underlying file was been written to

535 Fill in the `vm_file` field

536 This increments the file use count

537 Call the filesystem or device specific `mmap` function

538-539 If an error called, goto `unmap_and_free_vma` to clean up and return the error

541 If an anonymous shared mapping is required, call `shmem_zero_setup()` to do the hard work

```

546     /* Can addr have changed??
547     *
548     * Answer: Yes, several device drivers can do it in their
549     *       f_op->mmap method. -DaveM
550     */
551     if (addr != vma->vm_start) {
552         /*
553         * It is a bit too late to pretend changing the virtual
554         * area of the mapping, we just corrupted userspace
555         * in the do_munmap, so FIXME (not in 2.4 to avoid
556         * breaking
557         * the driver API).
558         */
559         struct vm_area_struct * stale_vma;
560         /* Since addr changed, we rely on the mmap op to prevent
561         * collisions with existing vmas and just use
562         * find_vma_prepare
563         * to update the tree pointers.
564         */
565         addr = vma->vm_start;
566         stale_vma = find_vma_prepare(mm, addr, &prev,
567                                     &rb_link, &rb_parent);
568         /*
569         * Make sure the lowlevel driver did its job right.
570         */
571         if (unlikely(stale_vma && stale_vma->vm_start <
572                     vma->vm_end)) {
573             printk(KERN_ERR "buggy mmap operation: [<%p>]\n",
574                    file ? file->f_op->mmap : NULL);
575             BUG();
576         }
577     }
578     vma_link(mm, vma, prev, rb_link, rb_parent);
579     if (correct_wcount)
580         atomic_inc(&file->f_dentry->d_inode->i_writecount);

```

551-574 If the address has changed, it means the device specific mmap operation mapped the vma somewhere else. `find_vma_prepare()` is used to find the new vma that was set up

576 Link in the new `vm_area_struct`

577-578 Update the file write count

```

580 out:
581     mm->total_vm += len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
582     if (vm_flags & VM_LOCKED) {
583         mm->locked_vm += len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
584         make_pages_present(addr, addr + len);
585     }
586     return addr;
587
588 unmap_and_free_vma:
589     if (correct_wcount)
590         atomic_inc(&file->f_dentry->d_inode->i_writecount);
591     vma->vm_file = NULL;
592     fput(file);
593
594     /* Undo any partial mapping done by a device driver. */
595     zap_page_range(mm, vma->vm_start, vma->vm_end - vma->vm_start);
596 free_vma:
597     kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, vma);
598     return error;
599 }

```

581-586 Update statistics for the process `mm_struct` and return the new address

588-595 This is reached if the file has been partially mapped before failing. The write statistics are updated and then all user pages are removed with `zap_page_range()`

596-598 This goto is used if the mapping failed immediately after the `vm_area_struct` is created. It is freed back to the slab allocator before the error is returned

## 5.3.2 Finding a Mapped Memory Region

**Function:** `find_vma` (*mm/mmap.c*)

```

659 struct vm_area_struct * find_vma(struct mm_struct * mm, unsigned long
addr)
660 {
661     struct vm_area_struct *vma = NULL;
662
663     if (mm) {
664         /* Check the cache first. */
665         /* (Cache hit rate is typically around 35%.) */
666         vma = mm->mmap_cache;
667         if (!(vma && vma->vm_end > addr && vma->vm_start <= addr))

```

```

{
668         rb_node_t * rb_node;
669
670         rb_node = mm->mm_rb.rb_node;
671         vma = NULL;
672
673         while (rb_node) {
674             struct vm_area_struct * vma_tmp;
675
676             vma_tmp = rb_entry(rb_node, struct
vm_area_struct, vm_rb);
677
678             if (vma_tmp->vm_end > addr) {
679                 vma = vma_tmp;
680                 if (vma_tmp->vm_start <= addr)
681                     break;
682                 rb_node = rb_node->rb_left;
683             } else
684                 rb_node = rb_node->rb_right;
685         }
686         if (vma)
687             mm->mmap_cache = vma;
688     }
689 }
690     return vma;
691 }

```

659 The two parameters are the top level `mm_struct` that is to be searched and the address the caller is interested in

661 Default to returning `NULL` for address not found

663 Make sure the caller does not try and search a bogus `mm`

666 `mmap_cache` has the result of the last call to `find_vma()`. This has a chance of not having to search at all through the red-black tree

667 If it is a valid VMA that is being examined, check to see if the address being searched is contained within it. If it is, the VMA was the `mmap_cache` one so it can be returned, otherwise the tree is searched

668-672 Start at the root of the tree

673-685 This block is the tree walk

676 The macro, as the name suggests, returns the VMA this tree node points to

678 Check if the next node traversed by the left or right leaf

680 If the current VMA is what is required, exit the while loop

687 If the VMA is valid, set the `mmap_cache` for the next call to `find_vma()`

690 Return the VMA that contains the address or as a side effect of the tree walk, return the VMA that is closest to the requested address

**Function:** `find_vma_prev` (*mm/mmap.c*)

```

694 struct vm_area_struct * find_vma_prev(struct mm_struct * mm, unsigned long
addr,
695                                     struct vm_area_struct **pprev)
696 {
697     if (mm) {
698         /* Go through the RB tree quickly. */
699         struct vm_area_struct * vma;
700         rb_node_t * rb_node, * rb_last_right, * rb_prev;
701
702         rb_node = mm->mm_rb.rb_node;
703         rb_last_right = rb_prev = NULL;
704         vma = NULL;
705
706         while (rb_node) {
707             struct vm_area_struct * vma_tmp;
708
709             vma_tmp = rb_entry(rb_node, struct vm_area_struct,
vm_rb);
710
711             if (vma_tmp->vm_end > addr) {
712                 vma = vma_tmp;
713                 rb_prev = rb_last_right;
714                 if (vma_tmp->vm_start <= addr)
715                     break;
716                 rb_node = rb_node->rb_left;
717             } else {
718                 rb_last_right = rb_node;
719                 rb_node = rb_node->rb_right;
720             }
721         }
722         if (vma) {
723             if (vma->vm_rb.rb_left) {
724                 rb_prev = vma->vm_rb.rb_left;
725                 while (rb_prev->rb_right)
726                     rb_prev = rb_prev->rb_right;
727             }
728             *pprev = NULL;

```



```

729         if (rb_prev)
730             *pprev = rb_entry(rb_prev, struct
                               vm_area_struct, vm_rb);
731         if ((rb_prev ? (*pprev)->vm_next : mm->mmap) !=
vma)
732             BUG();
733         return vma;
734     }
735 }
736 *pprev = NULL;
737 return NULL;
738 }

```

694-721 This is essentially the same as the `find_vma()` function already described. The only difference is that the last right node accesses is remembered as this will represent the vma previous to the requested vma.

723-727 If the returned VMA has a left node, it means that it has to be traversed. It first takes the left leaf and then follows each right leaf until the bottom of the tree is found.

729-730 Extract the VMA from the red-black tree node

731-732 A debugging check, if this is the previous node, then its next field should point to the VMA being returned. If it is not, it is a bug

**Function: `find_vma_intersection`** (*include/linux/mm.h*)

```

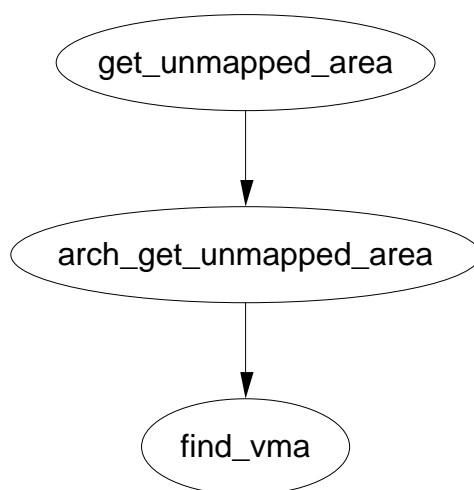
662 static inline struct vm_area_struct * find_vma_intersection(struct
mm_struct * mm, unsigned long start_addr, unsigned long end_addr)
663 {
664     struct vm_area_struct * vma = find_vma(mm, start_addr);
665
666     if (vma && end_addr <= vma->vm_start)
667         vma = NULL;
668     return vma;
669 }

```

664 Return the VMA closest to the starting address

666 If a VMA is returned and the end address is still less than the beginning of the returned VMA, the VMA does not intersect

668 Return the VMA if it does intersect

Figure 5.2: Call Graph: `get_unmapped_area`

### 5.3.3 Finding a Free Memory Region

**Function:** `get_unmapped_area` (*mm/mmap.c*)

```

642 unsigned long get_unmapped_area(struct file *file, unsigned long addr,
643 unsigned long len, unsigned long pgoff, unsigned long flags)
644 {
645     if (flags & MAP_FIXED) {
646         if (addr > TASK_SIZE - len)
647             return -ENOMEM;
648         if (addr & ~PAGE_MASK)
649             return -EINVAL;
650         return addr;
651     }
652     if (file && file->f_op && file->f_op->get_unmapped_area)
653         return file->f_op->get_unmapped_area(file, addr, len,
654 pgoff, flags);
655     return arch_get_unmapped_area(file, addr, len, pgoff, flags);
656 }
  
```

642 The parameters passed are

`file` The file or device being mapped

`addr` The requested address to map to

`len` The length of the mapping

`pgoff` The offset within the file being mapped

flagsProtection flags

644-650 Sanity checked. If it is required that the mapping be placed at the specified address, make sure it will not overflow the address space and that it is page aligned

652 If the struct file provides a `get_unmapped_area()` function, use it

655 Else use the architecture specific function

**Function: `arch_get_unmapped_area`** (*mm/mmap.c*)

```

612 #ifndef HAVE_ARCH_UNMAPPED_AREA
613 static inline unsigned long arch_get_unmapped_area(struct file *filp,
unsigned long addr, unsigned long len, unsigned long pgoff, unsigned long
flags)
614 {
615     struct vm_area_struct *vma;
616
617     if (len > TASK_SIZE)
618         return -ENOMEM;
619
620     if (addr) {
621         addr = PAGE_ALIGN(addr);
622         vma = find_vma(current->mm, addr);
623         if (TASK_SIZE - len >= addr &&
624             (!vma || addr + len <= vma->vm_start))
625             return addr;
626     }
627     addr = PAGE_ALIGN(TASK_UNMAPPED_BASE);
628
629     for (vma = find_vma(current->mm, addr); ; vma = vma->vm_next) {
630         /* At this point: (!vma || addr < vma->vm_end). */
631         if (TASK_SIZE - len < addr)
632             return -ENOMEM;
633         if (!vma || addr + len <= vma->vm_start)
634             return addr;
635         addr = vma->vm_end;
636     }
637 }
638 #else
639 extern unsigned long arch_get_unmapped_area(struct file *, unsigned long,
unsigned long, unsigned long);
640 #endif

```

- 612 If this is not defined, it means that the architecture does not provide its own `arch_get_unmapped_area` so this one is used instead
- 613 The parameters are the same as those for `get_unmapped_area()`
- 617-618 Sanity check, make sure the required map length is not too long
- 620-626 If an address is provided, use it for the mapping
- 621 Make sure the address is page aligned
- 622 `find_vma()` will return the region closest to the requested address
- 623-625 Make sure the mapping will not overlap with another region. If it does not, return it as it is safe to use. Otherwise it gets ignored
- 627 `TASK_UNMAPPED_BASE` is the starting point for searching for a free region to use
- 629-636 Starting from `TASK_UNMAPPED_BASE`, linearly search the VMA's until a large enough region between them is found to store the new mapping. This is essentially a first fit search
- 639 If an external function is provided, it still needs to be declared here

### 5.3.4 Inserting a memory region

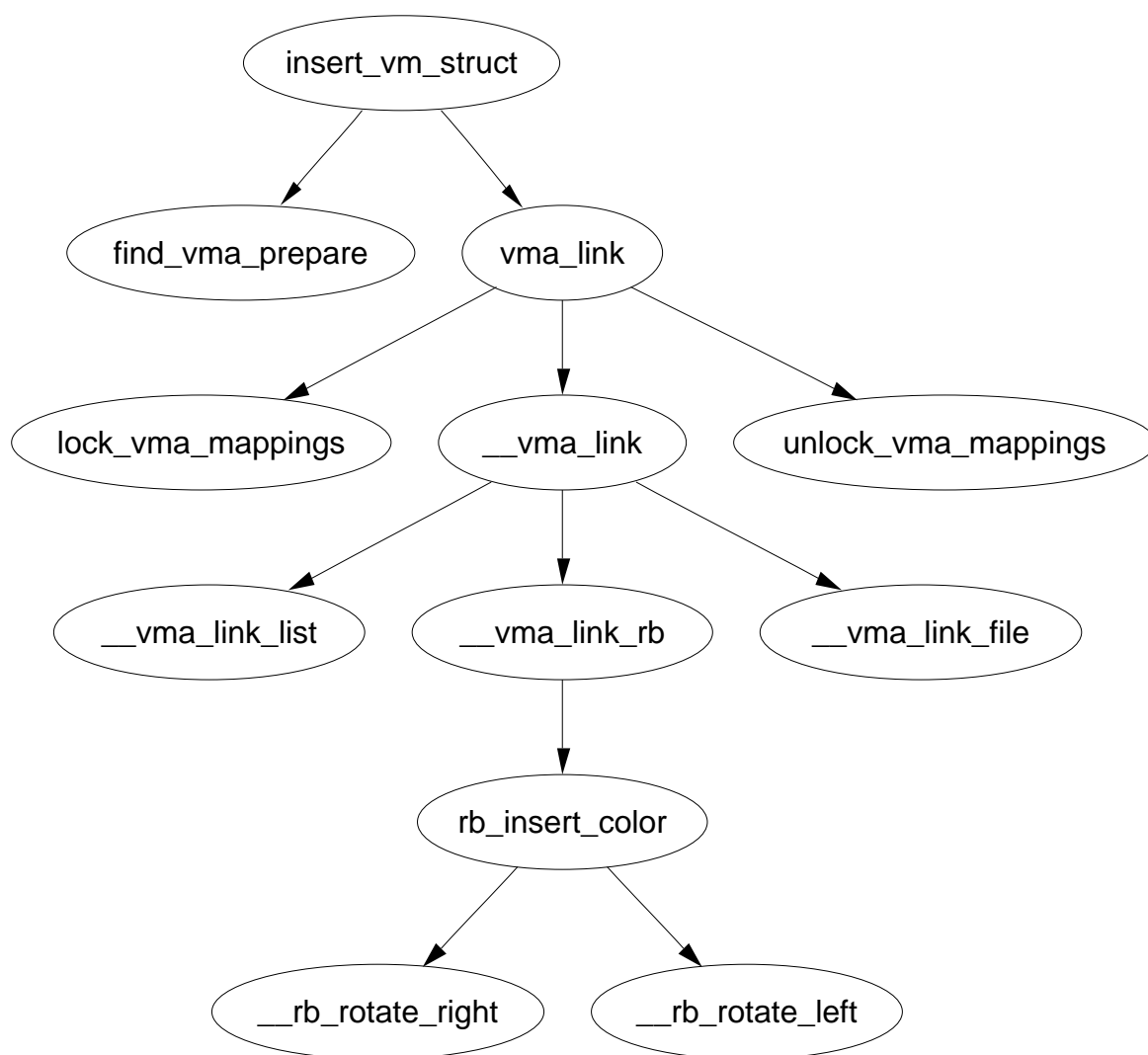
**Function:** `__insert_vm_struct` (*mm/mmap.c*)

This is the top level function for inserting a new vma into an address space. There is a second function like it called simply `insert_vm_struct()` that is not described in detail here as the only difference is the one line of code increasing the `map_count`.

```

1168 void __insert_vm_struct(struct mm_struct * mm, struct vm_area_struct * vma)
1169 {
1170     struct vm_area_struct * __vma, * prev;
1171     rb_node_t ** rb_link, * rb_parent;
1172
1173     __vma = find_vma_prepare(mm, vma->vm_start, &prev,
                             &rb_link, &rb_parent);
1174     if (__vma && __vma->vm_start < vma->vm_end)
1175         BUG();
1176     __vma_link(mm, vma, prev, rb_link, rb_parent);
1177     mm->map_count++;
1178     validate_mm(mm);
1179 }
```

- 1168 The arguments are the `mm_struct` `mm` that represents the linear space the `vm_area_struct` `vma` is to be inserted into

Figure 5.3: `insert_vm_struct`

- 1173 `find_vma_prepare()` locates where the new vma can be inserted. It will be inserted between `prev` and `__vma` and the required nodes for the red-black tree are also returned
- 1174-1175 This is a check to make sure the returned vma is invalid. It is unclear how such a broken vma could exist
- 1176 This function does the actual work of linking the vma struct into the linear linked list and the red-black tree
- 1177 Increase the `map_count` to show a new mapping has been added
- 1178 `validate_mm()` is a debugging macro for red-black trees. If `DEBUG_MM_RB` is set, the linear list of vma's and the tree will be traversed to make sure it is valid. The tree traversal is a recursive function so it is very important that that it is used only if really necessary as a large number of mappings could cause a stack overflow. If it is not set, `validate_mm()` does nothing at all

**Function: `find_vma_prepare`** (*mm/mmap.c*)

This is responsible for finding the correct places to insert a VMA at the supplied address. It returns a number of pieces of information via the actual return and the function arguments. The forward VMA to link to is returned with `return`. `pprev` is the previous node which is required because the list is a singly linked list. `rb_link` and `rb_parent` are the parent and leaf node the new VMA will be inserted between.

```

246 static struct vm_area_struct * find_vma_prepare(struct mm_struct * mm,
247                                               unsigned long addr,
248                                               struct vm_area_struct ** pprev,
249                                               rb_node_t *** rb_link,
250                                               rb_node_t ** rb_parent)
251 {
252     struct vm_area_struct * vma;
253     rb_node_t ** __rb_link, * __rb_parent, * rb_prev;
254     __rb_link = &mm->mm_rb.rb_node;
255     rb_prev = __rb_parent = NULL;
256     vma = NULL;
257     while (*__rb_link) {
258         struct vm_area_struct *vma_tmp;
259         __rb_parent = *__rb_link;
260         vma_tmp = rb_entry(__rb_parent,
261                             struct vm_area_struct, vm_rb);
262         if (vma_tmp->vm_end > addr) {

```

```

264         vma = vma_tmp;
265         if (vma_tmp->vm_start <= addr)
266             return vma;
267         __rb_link = &__rb_parent->rb_left;
268     } else {
269         rb_prev = __rb_parent;
270         __rb_link = &__rb_parent->rb_right;
271     }
272 }
273
274 *pprev = NULL;
275 if (rb_prev)
276     *pprev = rb_entry(rb_prev, struct vm_area_struct, vm_rb);
277 *rb_link = __rb_link;
278 *rb_parent = __rb_parent;
279 return vma;
280 }

```

246 The function arguments are described above

253-255 Initialise the search

267-272 This is a similar tree walk to what was described for `find_vma()`. The only real difference is the nodes last traversed are remembered with the `__rb_link()` and `__rb_parent()` variables

275-276 Get the back linking vma via the red-black tree

279 Return the forward linking vma

**Function: `vma_link`** (*mm/mmap.c*)

This is the top-level function for linking a VMA into the proper lists. It is responsible for acquiring the necessary locks to make a safe insertion

```

337 static inline void vma_link(struct mm_struct * mm,
                             struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                             struct vm_area_struct * prev,
338                             rb_node_t ** rb_link, rb_node_t * rb_parent)
339 {
340     lock_vma_mappings(vma);
341     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
342     __vma_link(mm, vma, prev, rb_link, rb_parent);
343     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
344     unlock_vma_mappings(vma);
345
346     mm->map_count++;
347     validate_mm(mm);
348 }

```

337 `mm` is the address space the `vma` is to be inserted into. `prev` is the backwards linked `vma` for the linear linked list of `vma`'s. `rb_link` and `rb_parent` are the nodes required to make the `rb` insertion

340 This function acquires the spinlock protecting the `address_space` representing the file that is been memory mapped.

341 Acquire the page table lock which protects the whole `mm_struct`

342 Insert the VMA

343 Free the lock protecting the `mm_struct`

345 Unlock the `address_space` for the file

346 Increase the number of mappings in this `mm`

347 If `DEBUG_MM_RB` is set, the `RB` trees and linked lists will be checked to make sure they are still valid

**Function:** `__vma_link` (*mm/mmap.c*)

This simply calls three helper functions which are responsible for linking the VMA into the three linked lists that link VMA's together.

```
329 static void __vma_link(struct mm_struct * mm,
                        struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                        struct vm_area_struct * prev,
330                        rb_node_t ** rb_link, rb_node_t * rb_parent)
331 {
332     __vma_link_list(mm, vma, prev, rb_parent);
333     __vma_link_rb(mm, vma, rb_link, rb_parent);
334     __vma_link_file(vma);
335 }
```

332 This links the VMA into the linear linked lists of VMA's in this `mm` via the `vm_next` field

333 This links the VMA into the red-black tree of VMA's in this `mm` whose root is stored in the `vm_rb` field

334 This links the VMA into the shared mapping VMA links. Memory mapped files are linked together over potentially many `mm`'s by this function via the `vm_next_share` and `vm_pprev_share` fields



**Function:** `__vma_link_list` (*mm/mmap.c*)

```

282 static inline void __vma_link_list(struct mm_struct * mm,
                                     struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                                     struct vm_area_struct * prev,
                                     rb_node_t * rb_parent)
283
284 {
285     if (prev) {
286         vma->vm_next = prev->vm_next;
287         prev->vm_next = vma;
288     } else {
289         mm->mmap = vma;
290         if (rb_parent)
291             vma->vm_next = rb_entry(rb_parent, struct
vm_area_struct, vm_rb);
292         else
293             vma->vm_next = NULL;
294     }
295 }

```

285 If prev is not null, the vma is simply inserted into the list

289 Else this is the first mapping and the first element of the list has to be stored in the mm\_struct

290 The vma is stored as the parent node

**Function:** `__vma_link_rb` (*mm/mmap.c*)

The principle workings of this function are stored within `include/linux/rbtree.h` and will not be discussed in detail with this document.

```

297 static inline void __vma_link_rb(struct mm_struct * mm,
                                    struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                                    rb_node_t ** rb_link,
                                    rb_node_t * rb_parent)
298
299 {
300     rb_link_node(&vma->vm_rb, rb_parent, rb_link);
301     rb_insert_color(&vma->vm_rb, &mm->mm_rb);
302 }

```

**Function:** `__vma_link_file` (*mm/mmap.c*)

This function links the VMA into a linked list of shared file mappings.

```

304 static inline void __vma_link_file(struct vm_area_struct * vma)
305 {
306     struct file * file;

```

```

307
308     file = vma->vm_file;
309     if (file) {
310         struct inode * inode = file->f_dentry->d_inode;
311         struct address_space *mapping = inode->i_mapping;
312         struct vm_area_struct **head;
313
314         if (vma->vm_flags & VM_DENYWRITE)
315             atomic_dec(&inode->i_writecount);
316
317         head = &mapping->i_mmap;
318         if (vma->vm_flags & VM_SHARED)
319             head = &mapping->i_mmap_shared;
320
321         /* insert vma into inode's share list */
322         if((vma->vm_next_share = *head) != NULL)
323             (*head)->vm_pprev_share = &vma->vm_next_share;
324         *head = vma;
325         vma->vm_pprev_share = head;
326     }
327 }

```

309 Check to see if this VMA has a shared file mapping. If it does not, this function has nothing more to do

310-312 Extract the relevant information about the mapping from the vma

314-315 If this mapping is not allowed to write even if the permissions are ok for writing, decrement the `i_writecount` field. A negative value to this field indicates that the file is memory mapped and may not be written to. Efforts to open the file for writing will now fail

317-319 Check to make sure this is a shared mapping

322-325 Insert the VMA into the shared mapping linked list

### 5.3.5 Merging contiguous region

**Function:** `vma_merge` (*mm/mmap.c*)

This function checks to see if a region pointed to by `prev` may be expanded forwards to cover the area from `addr` to `end` instead of allocating a new VMA. If it cannot, the VMA ahead is checked to see if it can be expanded backwards instead.

```

350 static int vma_merge(struct mm_struct * mm, struct vm_area_struct * prev,
351                    rb_node_t * rb_parent,
                    unsigned long addr, unsigned long end,

```

```

                                unsigned long vm_flags)
352 {
353     spinlock_t * lock = &mm->page_table_lock;
354     if (!prev) {
355         prev = rb_entry(rb_parent, struct vm_area_struct, vm_rb);
356         goto merge_next;
357     }
358     if (prev->vm_end == addr && can_vma_merge(prev, vm_flags)) {
359         struct vm_area_struct * next;
360
361         spin_lock(lock);
362         prev->vm_end = end;
363         next = prev->vm_next;
364         if (next && prev->vm_end == next->vm_start &&
365             can_vma_merge(next, vm_flags)) {
366             prev->vm_end = next->vm_end;
367             __vma_unlink(mm, next, prev);
368             spin_unlock(lock);
369
370             mm->map_count--;
371             kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, next);
372             return 1;
373         }
374         spin_unlock(lock);
375         return 1;
376     }
377     prev = prev->vm_next;
378     if (prev) {
379 merge_next:
380         if (!can_vma_merge(prev, vm_flags))
381             return 0;
382         if (end == prev->vm_start) {
383             spin_lock(lock);
384             prev->vm_start = addr;
385             spin_unlock(lock);
386             return 1;
387         }
388     }
389
390     return 0;
391 }

```

350 The parameters are as follows;

mm The mm the VMA's belong to

`prev` The VMA before the address we are interested in  
`rb_parent` The parent RB node as returned by `find_vma_prepare()`  
`addr` The starting address of the region to be merged  
`end` The end of the region to be merged  
`vm_flags` The permission flags of the region to be merged

353 This is the lock to the mm struct

354-357 If `prev` is not passed it, it is taken to mean that the VMA being tested for merging is in front of the region from `addr` to `end`. The entry for that VMA is extracted from the `rb_parent`

358-375 Check to see can the region pointed to by `prev` may be expanded to cover the current region

358 The function `can_vma_merge()` checks the permissions of `prev` with those in `vm_flags` and that the VMA has no file mappings. If it is true, the area at `prev` may be expanded

361 Lock the mm struct

362 Expand the end of the VMA region (`vm_end`) to the end of the new mapping (`end`)

363 `next` is now the VMA in front of the newly expanded VMA

364 Check if the expanded region can be merged with the VMA in front of it

365 If it can, continue to expand the region to cover the next VMA

366 As a VMA has been merged, one region is now defunct and may be unlinked

367 No further adjustments are made to the mm struct so the lock is released

369 There is one less mapped region to reduce the `map_count`

370 Delete the struct describing the merged VMA

371 Return success

377 If this line is reached it means the region pointed to by `prev` could not be expanded forward so a check is made to see if the region ahead can be merged backwards instead

382-388 Same idea as the above block except instead of adjusted `vm_end` to cover `end`, `vm_start` is expanded to cover `addr`

**Function: can\_vma\_merge** (*include/linux/mm.h*)

This trivial function checks to see if the permissions of the supplied VMA match the permissions in `vm_flags`

```

571 static inline int can_vma_merge(struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long
vm_flags)
572 {
573     if (!vma->vm_file && vma->vm_flags == vm_flags)
574         return 1;
575     else
576         return 0;
577 }

```

573 Self explanatory, true if there is no file/device mapping and the flags equal each other

### 5.3.6 Remapping and moving a memory region

**Function: sys\_mremap** (*mm/mremap.c*)

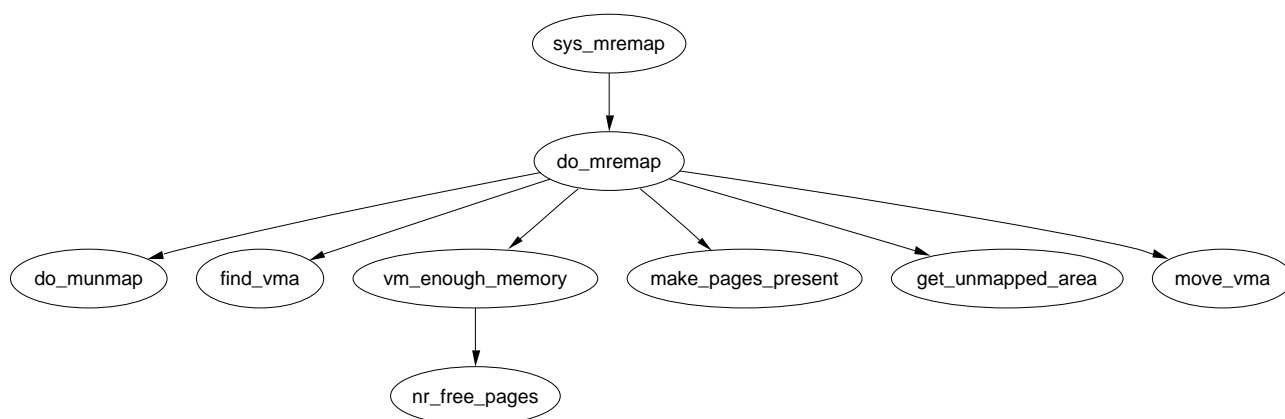


Figure 5.4: Call Graph: `sys_mremap`

This is the system service call to remap a memory region

```

342 asmlinkage unsigned long sys_mremap(unsigned long addr,
343     unsigned long old_len, unsigned long new_len,
344     unsigned long flags, unsigned long new_addr)
345 {
346     unsigned long ret;
347
348     down_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
349     ret = do_mremap(addr, old_len, new_len, flags, new_addr);
350     up_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);

```

```

351         return ret;
352     }
353

```

342-344 The parameters are the same as those described in the `mremap` man page

348 Acquire the mm semaphore

349 `do_mremap()` is the top level function for remapping a region

350 Release the mm semaphore

351 Return the status of the remapping

**Function: `do_mremap`** (*mm/mremap.c*)

This function does most of the actual “work” required to remap, resize and move a memory region. It is quite long but can be broken up into distinct parts which will be dealt with separately here. The tasks are broadly speaking

- Check usage flags and page align lengths
- Handle the condition where `MAP_FIXED` is set and the region is been moved to a new location.
- If a region is shrinking, allow it to happen unconditionally
- If the region is growing or moving, perform a number of checks in advance to make sure the move is allowed and safe
- Handle the case where the region is been expanded and cannot be moved
- Finally handle the case where the region has to be resized and moved

```

214 unsigned long do_mremap(unsigned long addr,
215         unsigned long old_len, unsigned long new_len,
216         unsigned long flags, unsigned long new_addr)
217 {
218     struct vm_area_struct *vma;
219     unsigned long ret = -EINVAL;
220
221     if (flags & ~(MREMAP_FIXED | MREMAP_MAYMOVE))
222         goto out;
223
224     if (addr & ~PAGE_MASK)
225         goto out;
226
227     old_len = PAGE_ALIGN(old_len);
228     new_len = PAGE_ALIGN(new_len);
229

```

214 The parameters of the function are

`addr` is the old starting address

`old_len` is the old region length

`new_len` is the new region length

`flags` is the option flags passed. If `MREMAP_MAYMOVE` is specified, it means that the region is allowed to move if there is not enough linear address space at the current space. If `MREMAP_FIXED` is specified, it means that the whole region is to move to the specified `new_addr` with the new length. The area from `new_addr` to `new_addr+new_len` will be unmapped with `do_munmap()`.

`new_addr` is the address of the new region if it is moved

219 At this point, the default return is `EINVAL` for invalid arguments

221-222 Make sure flags other than the two allowed flags are not used

224-225 The address passed in must be page aligned

227-228 Page align the passed region lengths

```

231     if (flags & MREMAP_FIXED) {
232         if (new_addr & ~PAGE_MASK)
233             goto out;
234         if (!(flags & MREMAP_MAYMOVE))
235             goto out;
236
237         if (new_len > TASK_SIZE || new_addr > TASK_SIZE - new_len)
238             goto out;
239
240         /* Check if the location we're moving into overlaps the
241          * old location at all, and fail if it does.
242          */
243         if ((new_addr <= addr) && (new_addr+new_len) > addr)
244             goto out;
245
246         if ((addr <= new_addr) && (addr+old_len) > new_addr)
247             goto out;
248
249         do_munmap(current->mm, new_addr, new_len);
250     }

```

This block handles the condition where the region location is fixed and must be fully moved. It ensures the area been moved to is safe and definitely unmapped.

231 `MREMAP_FIXED` is the flag which indicates the location is fixed

232-233 The new\_addr requested has to be page aligned

234-235 If MREMAP\_FIXED is specified, then the MAYMOVE flag must be used as well

237-238 Make sure the resized region does not exceed TASK\_SIZE

243-244 Just as the comments indicate, the two regions been used for the move may not overlap

249 Unmap the region that is about to be used. It is presumed the caller ensures that the region is not in use for anything important

```

256         ret = addr;
257         if (old_len >= new_len) {
258             do_munmap(current->mm, addr+new_len, old_len - new_len);
259             if (!(flags & MREMAP_FIXED) || (new_addr == addr))
260                 goto out;
261         }

```

256 At this point, the address of the resized region is the return value

257 If the old length is larger than the new length, then the region is shrinking

258 Unmap the unused region

259-230 If the region is not to be moved, either because MREMAP\_FIXED is not used or the new address matches the old address, goto out which will return the address

```

266         ret = -EFAULT;
267         vma = find_vma(current->mm, addr);
268         if (!vma || vma->vm_start > addr)
269             goto out;
270         /* We can't remap across vm area boundaries */
271         if (old_len > vma->vm_end - addr)
272             goto out;
273         if (vma->vm_flags & VM_DONTEXPAND) {
274             if (new_len > old_len)
275                 goto out;
276         }
277         if (vma->vm_flags & VM_LOCKED) {
278             unsigned long locked = current->mm->locked_vm <<
PAGE_SHIFT;
279             locked += new_len - old_len;
280             ret = -EAGAIN;
281             if (locked > current->rlim[RLIMIT_MEMLOCK].rlim_cur)

```



```

282             goto out;
283     }
284     ret = -ENOMEM;
285     if ((current->mm->total_vm << PAGE_SHIFT) + (new_len - old_len)
286         > current->rlim[RLIMIT_AS].rlim_cur)
287         goto out;
288     /* Private writable mapping? Check memory availability.. */
289     if ((vma->vm_flags & (VM_SHARED | VM_WRITE)) == VM_WRITE &&
290         !(flags & MAP_NORESERVE) &&
291         !vm_enough_memory((new_len - old_len) >> PAGE_SHIFT))
292         goto out;

```

Do a number of checks to make sure it is safe to grow or move the region

266 At this point, the default action is to return EFAULT causing a segmentation fault as the ranges of memory been used are invalid

267 Find the VMA responsible for the requested address

268 If the returned VMA is not responsible for this address, then an invalid address was used so return a fault

271-272 If the old\_len passed in exceeds the length of the VMA, it means the user is trying to remap multiple regions which is not allowed

273-276 If the VMA has been explicitly marked as non-resizable, raise a fault

277-278 If the pages for this VMA must be locked in memory, recalculate the number of locked pages that will be kept in memory. If the number of pages exceed the ulimit set for this resource, return EAGAIN indicating to the caller that the region is locked and cannot be resized

284 The default return at this point is to indicate there is not enough memory

285-287 Ensure that the user will not exceed their allowed allocation of memory

289-292 Ensure that there is enough memory to satisfy the request after the resizing

```

297     if (old_len == vma->vm_end - addr &&
298         !((flags & MREMAP_FIXED) && (addr != new_addr)) &&
299         (old_len != new_len || !(flags & MREMAP_MAYMOVE))) {
300         unsigned long max_addr = TASK_SIZE;
301         if (vma->vm_next)
302             max_addr = vma->vm_next->vm_start;
303         /* can we just expand the current mapping? */
304         if (max_addr - addr >= new_len) {
305             int pages = (new_len - old_len) >> PAGE_SHIFT;

```

```

306             spin_lock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
307             vma->vm_end = addr + new_len;
308             spin_unlock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
309             current->mm->total_vm += pages;
310             if (vma->vm_flags & VM_LOCKED) {
311                 current->mm->locked_vm += pages;
312                 make_pages_present(addr + old_len,
313                                 addr + new_len);
314             }
315             ret = addr;
316             goto out;
317         }
318     }

```

Handle the case where the region is been expanded and cannot be moved

297 If it is the full region that is been remapped and ...

298 The region is definitely not been moved and ...

299 The region is been expanded and cannot be moved then ...

300 Set the maximum address that can be used to TASK\_SIZE, 3GiB on an x86

301-302 If there is another region, set the max address to be the start of the next region

304-317 Only allow the expansion if the newly sized region does not overlap with the next VMA

305 Calculate the number of extra pages that will be required

306 Lock the mm spinlock

307 Expand the VMA

308 Free the mm spinlock

309 Update the statistics for the mm

310-314 If the pages for this region are locked in memory, make them present now

315-316 Return the address of the resized region

can t

```

324     ret = -ENOMEM;
325     if (flags & MREMAP_MAYMOVE) {
326         if (!(flags & MREMAP_FIXED)) {
327             unsigned long map_flags = 0;
328             if (vma->vm_flags & VM_SHARED)
329                 map_flags |= MAP_SHARED;
330
331             new_addr = get_unmapped_area(vma->vm_file, 0,
332                                         new_len, vma->vm_pgoff, map_flags);
333             ret = new_addr;
334             if (new_addr & ~PAGE_MASK)
335                 goto out;
336         }
337         ret = move_vma(vma, addr, old_len, new_len, new_addr);
338     }
339     return ret;
340 }

```

To expand the region, a new one has to be allocated and the old one moved to it

324 The default action is to return saying no memory is available

325 Check to make sure the region is allowed to move

326 If MREMAP\_FIXED is not specified, it means the new location was not supplied so one must be found

328-329 Preserve the MAP\_SHARED option

331 Find an unmapped region of memory large enough for the expansion

332 The return value is the address of the new region

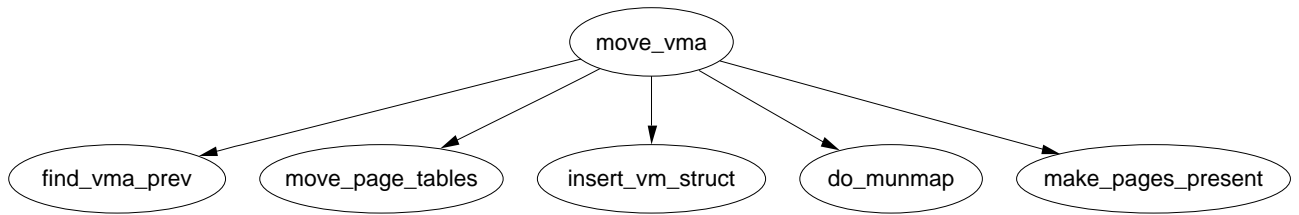
333-334 For the returned address to be not page aligned, get\_unmapped\_area would need to be broken. This could possibly be the case with a buggy device driver implementing get\_unmapped\_area incorrectly

336 Call move\_vma to move the region

338-339 Return the address if successful and the error code otherwise

**Function: move\_vma** (*mm/mremap.c*)

This function is responsible for moving all the page table entries from one VMA to another region. If necessary a new VMA will be allocated for the region being moved to. Just like the function above, it is very long but may be broken up into the following distinct parts.

Figure 5.5: Call Graph: `move_vma`

- Function preamble, find the VMA preceding the area about to be moved to and the VMA in front of the region to be mapped
- Handle the case where the new location is between two existing VMA's. See if the preceding region can be expanded forward or the next region expanded backwards to cover the new mapped region
- Handle the case where the new location is going to be the last VMA on the list. See if the preceding region can be expanded forward
- If a region could not be expanded, allocate a new VMA from the slab allocator
- Call `move_page_tables()`, fill in the new VMA details if a new one was allocated and update statistics before returning

```

125 static inline unsigned long move_vma(struct vm_area_struct * vma,
126     unsigned long addr, unsigned long old_len, unsigned long new_len,
127     unsigned long new_addr)
128 {
129     struct mm_struct * mm = vma->vm_mm;
130     struct vm_area_struct * new_vma, * next, * prev;
131     int allocated_vma;
132
133     new_vma = NULL;
134     next = find_vma_prev(mm, new_addr, &prev);
  
```

125-127 The parameters are

`vma`The VMA that the address been moved belongs to  
`addr`The starting address of the moving region  
`old_len`The old length of the region to move  
`new_len`The new length of the region moved  
`new_addr`The new address to relocate to

134 Find the VMA preceding the address been moved to indicated by `prev` and return the region after the new mapping as `next`

```

135     if (next) {
136         if (prev && prev->vm_end == new_addr &&
137             can_vma_merge(prev, vma->vm_flags) &&
138                 !vma->vm_file && !(vma->vm_flags & VM_SHARED)) {
139             spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
140             prev->vm_end = new_addr + new_len;
141             spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
142             new_vma = prev;
143             if (next != prev->vm_next)
144                 BUG();
145             if (prev->vm_end == next->vm_start &&
146                 can_vma_merge(next, prev->vm_flags)) {
147                 spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
148                 prev->vm_end = next->vm_end;
149                 __vma_unlink(mm, next, prev);
150                 spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
151                 mm->map_count--;
152                 kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, next);
153             }
154             } else if (next->vm_start == new_addr + new_len &&
155                 can_vma_merge(next, vma->vm_flags) &&
156                 !vma->vm_file && !(vma->vm_flags & VM_SHARED)) {
157                 spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
158                 next->vm_start = new_addr;
159                 spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
160                 new_vma = next;
161             }
162         } else {

```

In this block, the new location is between two existing VMA's. Checks are made to see can be preceding region be expanded to cover the new mapping and then if it can be expanded to cover the next VMA as well. If it cannot be expanded, the next region is checked to see if it can be expanded backwards.

136-137 If the preceding region touches the address to be mapped to and may be merged then enter this block which will attempt to expand regions

138 Lock the mm

139 Expand the preceding region to cover the new location

140 Unlock the mm

141 The new vma is now the preceding VMA which was just expanded

```

142-143 Unnecessary check to make sure the VMA linked list is intact. It is unclear
      how this situation could possibly occur
144 Check if the region can be expanded forward to encompass the next region
145 If it can, then lock the mm
146 Expand the VMA further to cover the next VMA
147 There is now an extra VMA so unlink it
148 Unlock the mm
150 There is one less mapping now so update the map_count
151 Free the memory used by the memory mapping
153 Else the prev region could not be expanded forward so check if the region
      pointed to be next may be expanded backwards to cover the new mapping
      instead
155 If it can, lock the mm
156 Expand the mapping backwards
157 Unlock the mm
158 The VMA representing the new mapping is now next

161         prev = find_vma(mm, new_addr-1);
162         if (prev && prev->vm_end == new_addr &&
163             can_vma_merge(prev, vma->vm_flags) && !vma->vm_file &&
164                 !(vma->vm_flags & VM_SHARED)) {
165             spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
166             prev->vm_end = new_addr + new_len;
167             spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
168             new_vma = prev;
169         }

```

This block is for the case where the newly mapped region is the last VMA (next is NULL) so a check is made to see can the preceding region be expanded.

```

161 Get the previously mapped region
162-163 Check if the regions may be mapped
164 Lock the mm
165 Expand the preceding region to cover the new mapping

```

```

166 Lock the mm
167 The VMA representing the new mapping is now prev
170
171     allocated_vma = 0;
172     if (!new_vma) {
173         new_vma = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
174         if (!new_vma)
175             goto out;
176         allocated_vma = 1;
177     }
178
179 Set a flag indicating if a new VMA was not allocated
180 If a VMA has not been expanded to cover the new mapping then...
181 Allocate a new VMA from the slab allocator
182-185 If it could not be allocated, goto out to return failure
186 Set the flag indicated a new VMA was allocated
187
188     if (!move_page_tables(current->mm, new_addr, addr, old_len)) {
189         if (allocated_vma) {
190             *new_vma = *vma;
191             new_vma->vm_start = new_addr;
192             new_vma->vm_end = new_addr+new_len;
193             new_vma->vm_pgoff +=
194                 (addr - vma->vm_start) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
195             new_vma->vm_raend = 0;
196             if (new_vma->vm_file)
197                 get_file(new_vma->vm_file);
198             if (new_vma->vm_ops && new_vma->vm_ops->open)
199                 new_vma->vm_ops->open(new_vma);
200             insert_vm_struct(current->mm, new_vma);
201         }
202         do_munmap(current->mm, addr, old_len);
203         current->mm->total_vm += new_len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
204         if (new_vma->vm_flags & VM_LOCKED) {
205             current->mm->locked_vm += new_len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
206             make_pages_present(new_vma->vm_start,
207                               new_vma->vm_end);
208         }
209         return new_addr;
210     }

```

```

201         if (allocated_vma)
202             kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, new_vma);
203 out:
204     return -ENOMEM;
205 }

```

179 `move_page_tables()` is responsible for copying all the page table entries. It returns 0 on success

180-191 If a new VMA was allocated, fill in all the relevant details, including the file/device entries and insert it into the various VMA linked lists with `insert_vm_struct()`

192 Unmap the old region as it is no longer required

193 Update the `total_vm` size for this process. The size of the old region is not important as it is handled within `do_munmap()`

194-198 If the VMA has the `VM_LOCKED` flag, all the pages within the region are made present with `mark_pages_present()`

199 Return the address of the new region

201-202 This is the error path. If a VMA was allocated, delete it

204 Return an out of memory error

**Function: `move_page_tables`** (*mm/mremap.c*)

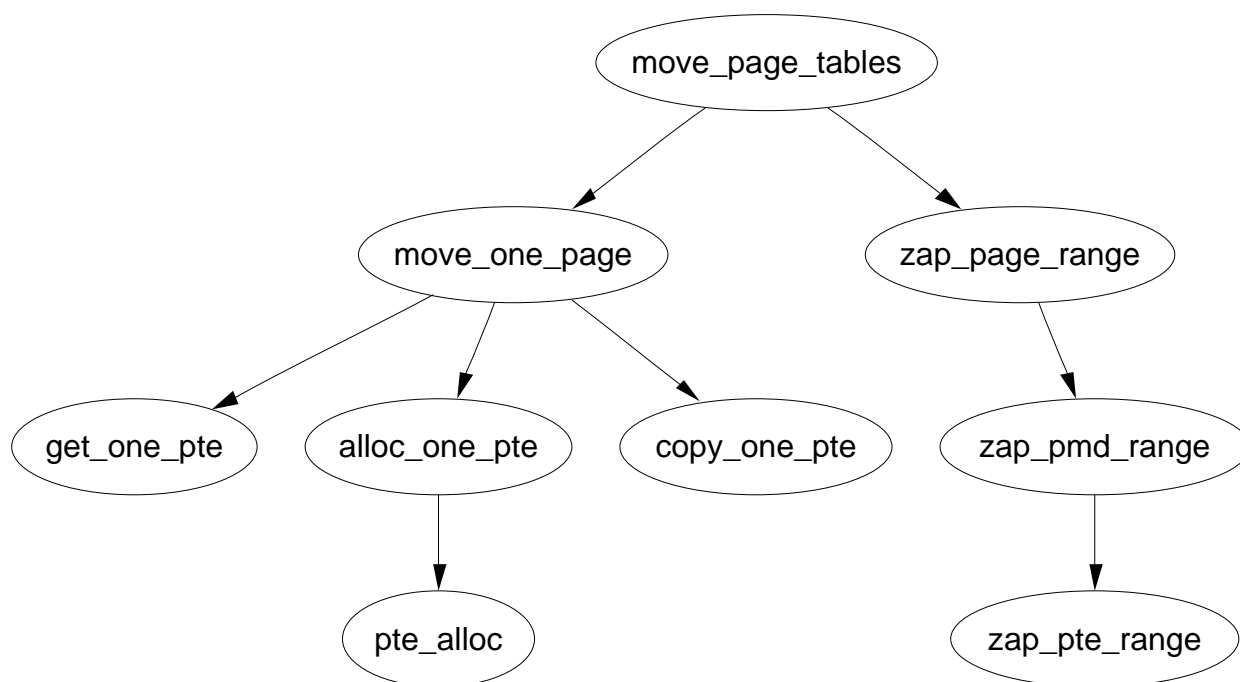
This function is responsible copying all the page table entries from the region pointed to be `old_addr` to `new_addr`. It works by literally copying page table entries one at a time. When it is finished, it deletes all the entries from the old area. This is not the most efficient way to perform the operation, but it is very easy to error recover.

```

90 static int move_page_tables(struct mm_struct * mm,
91     unsigned long new_addr, unsigned long old_addr, unsigned long len)
92 {
93     unsigned long offset = len;
94
95     flush_cache_range(mm, old_addr, old_addr + len);
96
102    while (offset) {
103        offset -= PAGE_SIZE;
104        if (move_one_page(mm, old_addr + offset, new_addr +
105            offset))
106            goto oops_we_failed;

```



Figure 5.6: Call Graph: `move_page_tables`

```

107     flush_tlb_range(mm, old_addr, old_addr + len);
108     return 0;
109
110 oops_we_failed:
111     flush_cache_range(mm, new_addr, new_addr + len);
112     while ((offset += PAGE_SIZE) < len)
113         move_one_page(mm, new_addr + offset, old_addr + offset);
114     zap_page_range(mm, new_addr, len);
115     return -1;
116 }

```

90 The parameters are the `mm` for the process, the new location, the old location and the length of the region to move entries for

95 `flush_cache_range()` will flush all CPU caches for this range. It must be called first as some architectures, notably Sparc's require that a virtual to physical mapping exist before flushing the TLB

102-106 This loops through each page in the region and calls `move_one_page()` to move the PTE. This translates to a lot of page table walking and could be performed much better but it is a rare operation

107 Flush the TLB for the old region

108 Return success

118-120 This block moves all the PTE's back. A `flush_tlb_range()` is not necessary as there is no way the region could have been used yet so no TLB entries should exist

121 Zap any pages that were allocated for the move

122 Return failure

**Function: `move_one_page`** (*mm/mremap.c*)

This function is responsible for acquiring the spinlock before finding the correct PTE with `get_one_pte()` and copying it with `copy_one_pte()`

```

77 static int move_one_page(struct mm_struct *mm,
                           unsigned long old_addr, unsigned long new_addr)
78 {
79     int error = 0;
80     pte_t * src;
81
82     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
83     src = get_one_pte(mm, old_addr);
84     if (src)
85         error = copy_one_pte(mm, src, alloc_one_pte(mm, new_addr));
86     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
87     return error;
88 }

```

82 Acquire the mm lock

83 Call `get_one_pte()` which walks the page tables to get the correct PTE

84-85 If the PTE exists, allocate a PTE for the destination and call `copy_one_pte()` to copy the PTE's

86 Release the lock

87 Return whatever `copy_one_pte()` returned

**Function: `get_one_pte`** (*mm/mremap.c*)

This is a very simple page table walk.

```

18 static inline pte_t *get_one_pte(struct mm_struct *mm, unsigned long addr)
19 {
20     pgd_t * pgd;
21     pmd_t * pmd;
22     pte_t * pte = NULL;
23
24     pgd = pgd_offset(mm, addr);

```

```

25     if (pgd_none(*pgd))
26         goto end;
27     if (pgd_bad(*pgd)) {
28         pgd_ERROR(*pgd);
29         pgd_clear(pgd);
30         goto end;
31     }
32
33     pmd = pmd_offset(pgd, addr);
34     if (pmd_none(*pmd))
35         goto end;
36     if (pmd_bad(*pmd)) {
37         pmd_ERROR(*pmd);
38         pmd_clear(pmd);
39         goto end;
40     }
41
42     pte = pte_offset(pmd, addr);
43     if (pte_none(*pte))
44         pte = NULL;
45 end:
46     return pte;
47 }

```

24 Get the PGD for this address

25-26 If no PGD exists, return NULL as no PTE will exist either

27-31 If the PGD is bad, mark that an error occurred in the region, clear its contents and return NULL

33-40 Acquire the correct PMD in the same fashion as for the PGD

42 Acquire the PTE so it may be returned if it exists

**Function: alloc\_one\_pte** (*mm/mremap.c*)

Trivial function to allocate what is necessary for one PTE in a region.

```

49 static inline pte_t *alloc_one_pte(struct mm_struct *mm,
                                     unsigned long addr)
50 {
51     pmd_t * pmd;
52     pte_t * pte = NULL;
53
54     pmd = pmd_alloc(mm, pgd_offset(mm, addr), addr);
55     if (pmd)
56         pte = pte_alloc(mm, pmd, addr);

```

```

57         return pte;
58     }

```

54 If a PMD entry does not exist, allocate it

55-56 If the PMD exists, allocate a PTE entry. The check to make sure it succeeded is performed later in the function `copy_one_pte()`

**Function: `copy_one_pte`** (*mm/mremap.c*)  
Copies the contents of one PTE to another.

```

60 static inline int copy_one_pte(struct mm_struct *mm,
                                pte_t * src, pte_t * dst)
61 {
62     int error = 0;
63     pte_t pte;
64
65     if (!pte_none(*src)) {
66         pte = ptep_get_and_clear(src);
67         if (!dst) {
68             /* No dest? We must put it back. */
69             dst = src;
70             error++;
71         }
72         set_pte(dst, pte);
73     }
74     return error;
75 }

```

65 If the source PTE does not exist, just return 0 to say the copy was successful

66 Get the PTE and remove it from its old location

67-71 If the `dst` does not exist, it means the call to `alloc_one_pte()` failed and the copy operation has failed and must be aborted

72 Move the PTE to its new location

74 Return an error if one occurred

### 5.3.7 Locking a Memory Region

**Function: `sys_mlock`** (*mm/mlock.c*)

This is the system call `mlock()` for locking a region of memory into physical memory. This function simply checks to make sure that process and user limits are not exceeded and that the region to lock is page aligned.

```

195 asmlinkage long sys_mlock(unsigned long start, size_t len)
196 {
197     unsigned long locked;
198     unsigned long lock_limit;
199     int error = -ENOMEM;
200
201     down_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
202     len = PAGE_ALIGN(len + (start & ~PAGE_MASK));
203     start &= PAGE_MASK;
204
205     locked = len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
206     locked += current->mm->locked_vm;
207
208     lock_limit = current->rlim[RLIMIT_MEMLOCK].rlim_cur;
209     lock_limit >>= PAGE_SHIFT;
210
211     /* check against resource limits */
212     if (locked > lock_limit)
213         goto out;
214
215     /* we may lock at most half of physical memory... */
216     /* (this check is pretty bogus, but doesn't hurt) */
217     if (locked > num_physpages/2)
218         goto out;
219
220     error = do_mlock(start, len, 1);
221 out:
222     up_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
223     return error;
224 }

```

201 Take the semaphore, we are likely to sleep during this so a spinlock can not be used

202 Round the length up to the page boundary

203 Round the start address down to the page boundary

205 Calculate how many pages will be locked

206 Calculate how many pages will be locked in total by this process

208-209 Calculate what the limit is to the number of locked pages

212-213 Do not allow the process to lock more than it should

217-218 Do not allow the process to map more than half of physical memory

220 Call `do_mlock()` which starts the “real” work by find the VMA closest to the area to lock before calling `mlock_fixup()`

222 Free the semaphore

223 Return the error or success code from `do_mmap()`

**Function:** `sys_mlockall` (*mm/mlock.c*)

This is the system call `mlockall()` which attempts to lock all pages in the calling process in memory. If `MCL_CURRENT` is specified, all current pages will be locked. If `MCL_FUTURE` is specified, all future mappings will be locked. The flags may be or-ed together.

```

238 static int do_mlockall(int flags)
239 {
240     int error;
241     unsigned int def_flags;
242     struct vm_area_struct * vma;
243
244     if (!capable(CAP_IPC_LOCK))
245         return -EPERM;
246
247     def_flags = 0;
248     if (flags & MCL_FUTURE)
249         def_flags = VM_LOCKED;
250     current->mm->def_flags = def_flags;
251
252     error = 0;
253     for (vma = current->mm->mmap; vma ; vma = vma->vm_next) {
254         unsigned int newflags;
255
256         newflags = vma->vm_flags | VM_LOCKED;
257         if (!(flags & MCL_CURRENT))
258             newflags &= ~VM_LOCKED;
259         error = mlock_fixup(vma, vma->vm_start, vma->vm_end,
newflags);
260         if (error)
261             break;
262     }
263     return error;
264 }

```

244-245 The calling process must be either root or have `CAP_IPC_LOCK` capabilities

248-250 The `MCL_FUTURE` flag says that all future pages should be locked so if set, the `def_flags` for VMAs should be `VM_LOCKED`

253-262 Cycle through all VMA's

256 Set the VM\_LOCKED flag in the current VMA flags

257-258 If the MCL\_CURRENT flag has not been set requesting that all current pages be locked, then clear the VM\_LOCKED flag. The logic is arranged like this so that the unlock code can use this same function just with no flags

259 Call `mlock_fixup()` which will adjust the regions as necessary

260-261 If a non-zero value is returned at any point, stop locking. It is interesting to note that VMAs already locked will not be unlocked

263 Return the success or error value

**Function: `do_mlock`** (*mm/mlock.c*)

This function is responsible for starting the work needed to either lock or unlock a region depending on the value of the `on` parameter. It is broken up into two sections. The first makes sure the region is page aligned (despite the fact the only two callers of this function do the same thing) before finding the VMA that is to be adjusted. The second part then sets the appropriate flags before calling `mlock_fixup()` for each VMA that is affected by this locking.

```

148 static int do_mlock(unsigned long start, size_t len, int on)
149 {
150     unsigned long nstart, end, tmp;
151     struct vm_area_struct * vma, * next;
152     int error;
153
154     if (on && !capable(CAP_IPC_LOCK))
155         return -EPERM;
156     len = PAGE_ALIGN(len);
157     end = start + len;
158     if (end < start)
159         return -EINVAL;
160     if (end == start)
161         return 0;
162     vma = find_vma(current->mm, start);
163     if (!vma || vma->vm_start > start)
164         return -ENOMEM;

```

Page align the request and find the VMA

154 Only root processes can lock pages

156 Page align the length despite it being already done in the calling function. This is probably an oversight

157-159 Calculate the end of the locking and make sure it is a valid region. Return -EINVAL if it is not

160-161 if locking a region of size 0, just return

162 Find the VMA that will be affected by this locking

163-164 If the VMA for this address range does not exist, return -ENOMEM

```

165
166     for (nstart = start ; ; ) {
167         unsigned int newflags;
168
169
170
171         newflags = vma->vm_flags | VM_LOCKED;
172         if (!on)
173             newflags &= ~VM_LOCKED;
174
175         if (vma->vm_end >= end) {
176             error = mlock_fixup(vma, nstart, end, newflags);
177             break;
178         }
179
180         tmp = vma->vm_end;
181         next = vma->vm_next;
182         error = mlock_fixup(vma, nstart, tmp, newflags);
183         if (error)
184             break;
185         nstart = tmp;
186         vma = next;
187         if (!vma || vma->vm_start != nstart) {
188             error = -ENOMEM;
189             break;
190         }
191     }
192     return error;
193 }
```

Walk through the VMAs affected by this locking and call `mlock_fixup()` for each of them.

166-192 Cycle through as many VMAs as necessary to lock the pages

171 Set the `VM_LOCKED` flag on the VMA

172-173 Unless this is an unlock in which case, remove the flag



175-177 If this VMA is the last VMA to be affected by the unlocking, call `mlock_fixup()` with the end address for the locking and exit

180-190 Else this is whole VMA needs to be locked so call `mlock_fixup()` with the end of this VMA as a paramter rather than the end of the actual locking

180 `tmp` is the end of the mapping on this VMA

181 `next` is the next VMA that will be affected by the locking

182 Call `mlock_fixup()` for this VMA

183-184 If an error occurs, back out. Note that the VMAs already locked are not fixed up right

185 The next start address is the start of the next VMA

186 Move to the next VMA

187-190 If there is no VMA , return `-ENOMEM`. The next condition though would require the regions to be extremely broken as a result of `mlock_fixup()` or have overlapping VMAs

192 Return the error or success value

### 5.3.8 Unlocking the region

**Function:** `sys_munlock` (*mm/mlock.c*)

Page align the request before calling `do_mlock()` which begins the real work of fixing up the regions.

```

226 asmlinkage long sys_munlock(unsigned long start, size_t len)
227 {
228     int ret;
229
230     down_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
231     len = PAGE_ALIGN(len + (start & ~PAGE_MASK));
232     start &= PAGE_MASK;
233     ret = do_mlock(start, len, 0);
234     up_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
235     return ret;
236 }
```

230 Acquire the semaphore protecting the `mm_struct`

231 Round the length of the region up to the nearest page boundary

232 Round the start of the region down to the nearest page boundary

233 Call `do_mlock()` to fix up the regions

234 Release the semaphore

235 Return the success or failure code

**Function:** `sys_munlockall` (*mm/mlock.c*)

Trivial function. If the flags to `mlockall` are 0 it gets translated as none of the current pages must be present and no future mappings should be locked either which means the `VM_LOCKED` flag will be removed on all VMAs.

```
293 asmlinkage long sys_munlockall(void)
294 {
295     int ret;
296
297     down_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
298     ret = do_mlockall(0);
299     up_write(&current->mm->mmap_sem);
300     return ret;
301 }
```

297 Acquire the semaphore protecting the `mm_struct`

298 Call `do_mlockall()` with 0 as flags which will remove the `VM_LOCKED` from all VMAs

299 Release the semaphore

300 Return the error or success code

### 5.3.9 Fixing up regions after locking/unlocking

**Function:** `mlock_fixup` (*mm/mlock.c*)

This function identifies three separate types of locking that must be address. There first is where the full VMA is to be locked where it calls `mlock_fixup_all()`. The second is where only the beginning portion of the VMA is affected, handled by `mlock_fixup_start()`. The third is the locking of a region at the end handled by `mlock_fixup_end()` and the last is locking a region in the middle of the VMA with `mlock_fixup_middle()`.

```
117 static int mlock_fixup(struct vm_area_struct * vma,
118     unsigned long start, unsigned long end, unsigned int newflags)
119 {
120     int pages, retval;
121
122     if (newflags == vma->vm_flags)
123         return 0;
```

```

124
125     if (start == vma->vm_start) {
126         if (end == vma->vm_end)
127             retval = mlock_fixup_all(vma, newflags);
128         else
129             retval = mlock_fixup_start(vma, end, newflags);
130     } else {
131         if (end == vma->vm_end)
132             retval = mlock_fixup_end(vma, start, newflags);
133         else
134             retval = mlock_fixup_middle(vma, start,
135                                         end, newflags);
136     }
137     if (!retval) {
138         /* keep track of amount of locked VM */
139         pages = (end - start) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
140         if (newflags & VM_LOCKED) {
141             pages = -pages;
142             make_pages_present(start, end);
143         }
144         vma->vm_mm->locked_vm -= pages;
145     }
146     return retval;
147 }

```

122-123 If no change is to be made, just return

125 If the start of the locking is at the start of the VMA, it means that either the full region is to be locked or only a portion at the beginning

126-127 The full VMA is being locked, call `mlock_fixup_all()`

128-129 Only a portion is to be locked, call `mlock_fixup_start()`

130 Else either the a region at the end is to be locked or a region in the middle

131-132 The end of the locking matches the end of the VMA, call `mlock_fixup_end()`

133-134 A region in the middle is to be locked, call `mlock_fixup_middle()`

136-144 The fixup functions return 0 on success. If the fixup of the regions succeeds and the regions are now marked as locked, call `make_pages_present()` which makes some basic checks before calling `get_user_pages()` which faults in all the pages in the same way the page fault handler does

**Function: mlock\_fixup\_all** (*mm/mlock.c*)

```

15 static inline int mlock_fixup_all(struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                                   int newflags)
16 {
17     spin_lock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
18     vma->vm_flags = newflags;
19     spin_unlock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
20     return 0;
21 }

```

17-19 Trivial, lock the VMA with the spinlock, set the new flags, release the lock and return success

**Function: mlock\_fixup\_start** (*mm/mlock.c*)

Slightly more complicated. A new VMA is required to represent the affected region. The start of the old VMA is moved forward

```

23 static inline int mlock_fixup_start(struct vm_area_struct * vma,
24     unsigned long end, int newflags)
25 {
26     struct vm_area_struct * n;
27
28     n = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
29     if (!n)
30         return -EAGAIN;
31     *n = *vma;
32     n->vm_end = end;
33     n->vm_flags = newflags;
34     n->vm_raend = 0;
35     if (n->vm_file)
36         get_file(n->vm_file);
37     if (n->vm_ops && n->vm_ops->open)
38         n->vm_ops->open(n);
39     vma->vm_pgoff += (end - vma->vm_start) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
40     lock_vma_mappings(vma);
41     spin_lock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
42     vma->vm_start = end;
43     __insert_vm_struct(current->mm, n);
44     spin_unlock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
45     unlock_vma_mappings(vma);
46     return 0;
47 }

```

28 Alloc a VMA from the slab allocator for the affected region

- 31-34 Copy in the necessary information
- 35-36 If the VMA has a file or device mapping, `get_file()` will increment the reference count
- 37-38 If an `open()` function is provided, call it
- 39 Update the offset within the file or device mapping for the old VMA to be the end of the locked region
- 40 `lock_vma_mappings()` will lock any files if this VMA is a shared region
- 41-44 Lock the parent `mm_struct`, update its start to be the end of the affected region, insert the new VMA into the processes linked lists (See Section 5.3.4) and release the lock
- 45 Unlock the file mappings with `unlock_vma_mappings()`
- 46 Return success

**Function: `mlock_fixup_end`** (*mm/mlock.c*)

Essentially the same as `mlock_fixup_start()` except the affected region is at the end of the VMA.

```

49 static inline int mlock_fixup_end(struct vm_area_struct * vma,
50     unsigned long start, int newflags)
51 {
52     struct vm_area_struct * n;
53
54     n = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
55     if (!n)
56         return -EAGAIN;
57     *n = *vma;
58     n->vm_start = start;
59     n->vm_pgoff += (n->vm_start - vma->vm_start) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
60     n->vm_flags = newflags;
61     n->vm_raend = 0;
62     if (n->vm_file)
63         get_file(n->vm_file);
64     if (n->vm_ops && n->vm_ops->open)
65         n->vm_ops->open(n);
66     lock_vma_mappings(vma);
67     spin_lock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
68     vma->vm_end = start;
69     __insert_vm_struct(current->mm, n);
70     spin_unlock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
71     unlock_vma_mappings(vma);
72     return 0;
73 }
```

- 54 Alloc a VMA from the slab allocator for the affected region
- 57-61 Copy in the necessary information and update the offset within the file or device mapping
- 62-63 If the VMA has a file or device mapping, `get_file()` will increment the reference count
- 64-65 If an `open()` function is provided, call it
- 66 `lock_vma_mappings()` will lock any files if this VMA is a shared region
- 67-70 Lock the parent `mm_struct`, update its start to be the end of the affected region, insert the new VMA into the processes linked lists (See Section 5.3.4) and release the lock
- 71 Unlock the file mappings with `unlock_vma_mappings()`
- 72 Return success

**Function: `mlock_fixup_middle`** (*mm/mlock.c*)

Similar to the previous two fixup functions except that 2 new regions are required to fix up the mapping.

```

75 static inline int mlock_fixup_middle(struct vm_area_struct * vma,
76     unsigned long start, unsigned long end, int newflags)
77 {
78     struct vm_area_struct * left, * right;
79
80     left = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
81     if (!left)
82         return -EAGAIN;
83     right = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
84     if (!right) {
85         kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, left);
86         return -EAGAIN;
87     }
88     *left = *vma;
89     *right = *vma;
90     left->vm_end = start;
91     right->vm_start = end;
92     right->vm_pgoff += (right->vm_start - left->vm_start) >>
        PAGE_SHIFT;
93     vma->vm_flags = newflags;
94     left->vm_raend = 0;
95     right->vm_raend = 0;
96     if (vma->vm_file)

```

```

97             atomic_add(2, &vma->vm_file->f_count);
98
99     if (vma->vm_ops && vma->vm_ops->open) {
100         vma->vm_ops->open(left);
101         vma->vm_ops->open(right);
102     }
103     vma->vm_raend = 0;
104     vma->vm_pgoff += (start - vma->vm_start) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
105     lock_vma_mappings(vma);
106     spin_lock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
107     vma->vm_start = start;
108     vma->vm_end = end;
109     vma->vm_flags = newflags;
110     __insert_vm_struct(current->mm, left);
111     __insert_vm_struct(current->mm, right);
112     spin_unlock(&vma->vm_mm->page_table_lock);
113     unlock_vma_mappings(vma);
114     return 0;
115 }

```

80-87 Allocate the two new VMAs from the slab allocator

88-89 Copy in the information from the old VMA into them

90 The end of the left region is the start of the region to be affected

91 The start of the right region is the end of the affected region

92 Update the file offset

93 The old VMA is now the affected region so update its flags

94-95 Make the readahead window 0 to ensure pages not belonging to their regions are not accidentally read ahead

96-97 Increment the reference count to the file/device mapping if there is one

99-102 Call the `open()` function for the two new mappings

103-104 Cancel the readahead window and update the offset within the file to be the beginning of the locked region

105 Lock the shared file/device mappings

106-112 Lock the parent `mm_struct`, update the VMA and insert the two new regions into the process before releasing the lock again

113 Unlock the shared mappings

114 Return success

### 5.3.10 Deleting a memory region

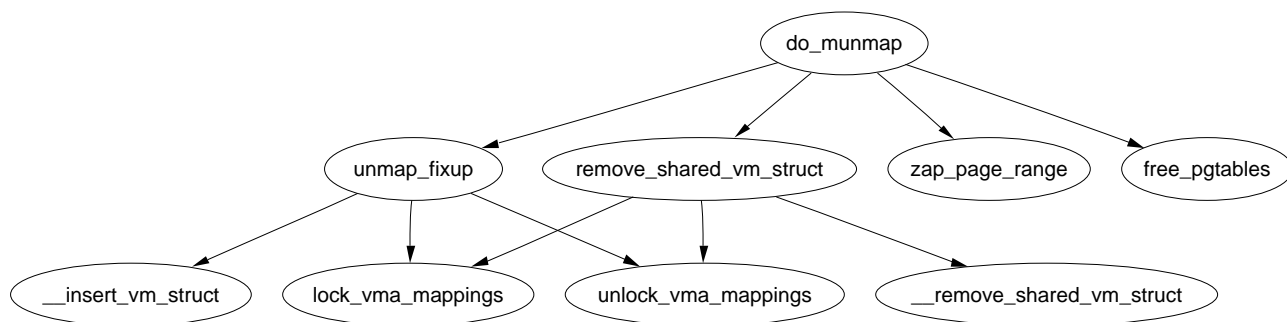


Figure 5.7: do\_munmap

#### Function: do\_munmap (*mm/mmap.c*)

This function is responsible for unmapping a region. If necessary, the unmapping can span multiple VMA's and it can partially unmap one if necessary. Hence the full unmapping operation is divided into two major operations. This function is responsible for finding what VMA's are affected and `unmap_fixup()` is responsible for fixing up the remaining VMA's.

This function is divided up in a number of small sections will be dealt with in turn. The are broadly speaking;

- Function preamble and find the VMA to start working from
- Take all VMA's affected by the unmapping out of the mm and place them on a linked list headed by the variable `free`
- Cycle through the list headed by `free`, unmap all the pages in the region to be unmapped and call `unmap_fixup()` to fix up the mappings
- Validate the mm and free memory associated with the unmapping

```

919 int do_munmap(struct mm_struct *mm, unsigned long addr, size_t len)
920 {
921     struct vm_area_struct *mpnt, *prev, **npp, *free, *extra;
922
923     if ((addr & ~PAGE_MASK) || addr > TASK_SIZE ||
        len > TASK_SIZE-addr)
924         return -EINVAL;
925
926     if ((len = PAGE_ALIGN(len)) == 0)
927         return -EINVAL;
928
929     mpnt = find_vma_prev(mm, addr, &prev);
930     if (!mpnt)
  
```



```

936             return 0;
937     /* we have  addr < mpnt->vm_end  */
938
939     if (mpnt->vm_start >= addr+len)
940         return 0;
941
942     if ((mpnt->vm_start < addr && mpnt->vm_end > addr+len)
943         && mm->map_count >= max_map_count)
944         return -ENOMEM;
945
946     extra = kmem_cache_alloc(vm_area_cachep, SLAB_KERNEL);
947     if (!extra)
948         return -ENOMEM;

```

919 The parameters are as follows;

mm The mm for the processes performing the unmap operation

addr The starting address of the region to unmap

len The length of the region

923-924 Ensure the address is page aligned and that the area to be unmapped is not in the kernel virtual address space

926-927 Make sure the region size to unmap is page aligned

934 Find the VMA that contains the starting address and the preceding VMA so it can be easily unlinked later

935-936 If no mpnt was returned, it means the address must be past the last used VMA so the address space is unused, just return

939-940 If the returned VMA starts past the region we are trying to unmap, then the region is unused, just return

943-945 The first part of the check sees if the VMA is just been partially unmapped, if it is, another VMA will be created later to deal with a region being broken into so the map\_count has to be checked to make sure it is not too large

951-953 In case a new mapping is required, it is allocated now as later it will be much more difficult to back out in event of an error

```

955     npp = (prev ? &prev->vm_next : &mm->mmap);
956     free = NULL;
957     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
958     for ( ; mpnt && mpnt->vm_start < addr+len; mpnt = *npp) {
959         *npp = mpnt->vm_next;
960         mpnt->vm_next = free;

```

```

961         free = mpnt;
962         rb_erase(&mpnt->vm_rb, &mm->mm_rb);
963     }
964     mm->mmap_cache = NULL; /* Kill the cache. */
965     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);

```

This section takes all the VMA's affected by the unmapping and places them on a separate linked list headed by a variable called `free`. This makes the fixup of the regions much easier.

955 `npp` becomes the next VMA in the list during the for loop following below. To initialise it, it is either the current VMA (`mpnt`) or else it becomes the first VMA in the list

956 `free` is the head of a linked list of VMAs that are affected by the unmapping

957 Lock the mm

958 Cycle through the list until the start of the current VMA is past the end of the region to be unmapped

959 `npp` becomes the next VMA in the list

960-961 Remove the current VMA from the linear linked list within the mm and place it on a linked list headed by `free`. The current `mpnt` becomes the head of the free linked list

962 Delete `mpnt` from the red-black tree

964 Remove the cached result in case the last looked up result is one of the regions to be unmapped

965 Free the mm

```

966
967     /* Ok - we have the memory areas we should free on the 'free'
list,
968     * so release them, and unmap the page range..
969     * If the one of the segments is only being partially unmapped,
970     * it will put new vm_area_struct(s) into the address space.
971     * In that case we have to be careful with VM_DENYWRITE.
972     */
973     while ((mpnt = free) != NULL) {
974         unsigned long st, end, size;
975         struct file *file = NULL;
976
977         free = free->vm_next;
978

```

```

979         st = addr < mpnt->vm_start ? mpnt->vm_start : addr;
980         end = addr+len;
981         end = end > mpnt->vm_end ? mpnt->vm_end : end;
982         size = end - st;
983
984         if (mpnt->vm_flags & VM_DENYWRITE &&
985             (st != mpnt->vm_start || end != mpnt->vm_end) &&
986             (file = mpnt->vm_file) != NULL) {
987             atomic_dec(&file->f_dentry->d_inode->i_writecount);
988         }
989         remove_shared_vm_struct(mpnt);
990         mm->map_count--;
991
992         zap_page_range(mm, st, size);
993
994         /*
995          * Fix the mapping, and free the old area if it wasn't
reused.
996          */
997         extra = unmap_fixup(mm, mpnt, st, size, extra);
998         if (file)
999             atomic_inc(&file->f_dentry->d_inode->i_writecount);
1000     }

```

973 Keep stepping through the list until no VMA's are left

977 Move free to the next element in the list leaving mpnt as the head about to be removed

979 st is the start of the region to be unmapped. If the addr is before the start of the VMA, the starting point is mpnt->vm\_start, otherwise it is the supplied address

980-981 Calculate the end of the region to map in a similar fashion

982 Calculate the size of the region to be unmapped in this pass

984-988 If the VM\_DENYWRITE flag is specified, a hole will be created by this unmapping and a file is mapped then the writecount is decremented. When this field is negative, it counts how many users there is protecting this file from being opened for writing

989 Remove the file mapping. If the file is still partially mapped, it will be acquired again during unmap\_fixup()

990 Reduce the map count

992 Remove all pages within this region

997 Call the fixup routing

998-999 Increment the writecount to the file as the region has been unmapped. If it was just partially unmapped, this call will simply balance out the decrement at line 987

```

1001     validate_mm(mm);
1002
1003     /* Release the extra vma struct if it wasn't used */
1004     if (extra)
1005         kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, extra);
1006
1007     free_pgtables(mm, prev, addr, addr+len);
1008
1009     return 0;
1010 }
```

1001 A debugging function only. If enabled, it will ensure the VMA tree for this mm is still valid

1004-1005 If extra VMA was not required, delete it

1007 Free all the page tables that were used for the unmapped region

1009 Return success

**Function: unmap\_fixup** (*mm/mmap.c*)

This function fixes up the regions after a block has been unmapped. It is passed a list of VMAs that are affected by the unmapping, the region and length to be unmapped and a spare VMA that may be required to fix up the region if a whole is created. There is four principle cases it handles; The unmapping of a region, partial unmapping from the start to somewhere in the middle, partial unmapping from somewhere in the middle to the end and the creation of a hole in the middle of the region. Each case will be taken in turn.

```

785 static struct vm_area_struct * unmap_fixup(struct mm_struct *mm,
786     struct vm_area_struct *area, unsigned long addr, size_t len,
787     struct vm_area_struct *extra)
788 {
789     struct vm_area_struct *mpnt;
790     unsigned long end = addr + len;
791
792     area->vm_mm->total_vm -= len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
793     if (area->vm_flags & VM_LOCKED)
794         area->vm_mm->locked_vm -= len >> PAGE_SHIFT;
795 }
```

Function preamble.

785 The parameters to the function are;

mm is the mm the unmapped region belongs to

area is the head of the linked list of VMAs affected by the unmapping

addr is the starting address of the unmapping

len is the length of the region to be unmapped

extra is a spare VMA passed in for when a hole in the middle is created

790 Calculate the end address of the region being unmapped

792 Reduce the count of the number of pages used by the process

793-794 If the pages were locked in memory, reduce the locked page count

```

796     /* Unmapping the whole area. */
797     if (addr == area->vm_start && end == area->vm_end) {
798         if (area->vm_ops && area->vm_ops->close)
799             area->vm_ops->close(area);
800         if (area->vm_file)
801             fput(area->vm_file);
802         kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, area);
803         return extra;
804     }

```

The first, and easiest, case is where the full region is being unmapped

797 The full region is unmapped if the addr is the start of the VMA and the end is the end of the VMA. This is interesting because if the unmapping is spanning regions, it is possible the end is *beyond* the end of the VMA but the full of this VMA is still being unmapped

798-799 If a close operation is supplied by the VMA, call it

800-801 If a file or device is mapped, call `fput()` which decrements the usage count and releases it if the count falls to 0

802 Free the memory for the VMA back to the slab allocator

803 Return the extra VMA as it was unused

```

807     if (end == area->vm_end) {
808         /*
809          * here area isn't visible to the semaphore-less readers
810          * so we don't need to update it under the spinlock.
811          */

```

```

812             area->vm_end = addr;
813             lock_vma_mappings(area);
814             spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
815     }

```

Handle the case where the middle of the region to the end is been unmapped

812 Truncate the VMA back to `addr`. At this point, the pages for the region have already freed and the page table entries will be freed later so no further work is required

813 If a file/device is being mapped, the lock protecting shared access to it is taken in the function `lock_vm_mappings()`

814 Lock the mm. Later in the function, the remaining VMA will be reinserted into the mm

```

815             else if (addr == area->vm_start) {
816                 area->vm_pgoff += (end - area->vm_start) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
817                 /* same locking considerations of the above case */
818                 area->vm_start = end;
819                 lock_vma_mappings(area);
820                 spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
821             }

```

Handle the case where the VMA is been unmapped from the start to some part in the middle

816 Increase the offset within the file/device mapped by the number of pages this unmapping represents

818 Move the start of the VMA to the end of the region being unmapped

819-820 Lock the file/device and mm as above

```

             else {
822                 /* Unmapping a hole: area->vm_start < addr <= end < area->vm_end */
823                 /* Add end mapping -- leave beginning for below */
824                 mpnt = extra;
825                 extra = NULL;
826
827                 mpnt->vm_mm = area->vm_mm;
828                 mpnt->vm_start = end;
829                 mpnt->vm_end = area->vm_end;
830                 mpnt->vm_page_prot = area->vm_page_prot;
831                 mpnt->vm_flags = area->vm_flags;
832                 mpnt->vm_raend = 0;

```

```

833         mpnt->vm_ops = area->vm_ops;
834         mpnt->vm_pgoff = area->vm_pgoff +
                        ((end - area->vm_start) >> PAGE_SHIFT);
835         mpnt->vm_file = area->vm_file;
836         mpnt->vm_private_data = area->vm_private_data;
837         if (mpnt->vm_file)
838             get_file(mpnt->vm_file);
839         if (mpnt->vm_ops && mpnt->vm_ops->open)
840             mpnt->vm_ops->open(mpnt);
841         area->vm_end = addr;    /* Truncate area */
842
843         /* Because mpnt->vm_file == area->vm_file this locks
844          * things correctly.
845          */
846         lock_vma_mappings(area);
847         spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
848         __insert_vm_struct(mm, mpnt);
849     }

```

Handle the case where a hole is being created by a partial unmapping. In this case, the extra VMA is required to create a new mapping from the end of the unmapped region to the end of the old VMA

824-825 Take the extra VMA and make VMA NULL so that the calling function will know it is in use and cannot be freed

826-836 Copy in all the VMA information

837 If a file/device is mapped, get a reference to it with `get_file()`

839-840 If an open function is provided, call it

841 Truncate the VMA so that it ends at the start of the region to be unmapped

846-847 Lock the files and mm as with the two previous cases

848 Insert the extra VMA into the mm

```

850
851         __insert_vm_struct(mm, area);
852         spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
853         unlock_vma_mappings(area);
854         return extra;
855     }

```

851 Reinsert the VMA into the mm

852 Unlock the page tables

853 Unlock the spinlock to the shared mapping

854 Return the extra VMA if it was not used and NULL if it was

### 5.3.11 Deleting all memory regions

**Function:** `exit_mmap` (*mm/mmap.c*)

This function simply steps through all VMAs associated with the supplied mm and unmaps them.

```

1122 void exit_mmap(struct mm_struct * mm)
1123 {
1124     struct vm_area_struct * mpnt;
1125
1126     release_segments(mm);
1127     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1128     mpnt = mm->mmap;
1129     mm->mmap = mm->mmap_cache = NULL;
1130     mm->mm_rb = RB_ROOT;
1131     mm->rss = 0;
1132     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1133     mm->total_vm = 0;
1134     mm->locked_vm = 0;
1135
1136     flush_cache_mm(mm);
1137     while (mpnt) {
1138         struct vm_area_struct * next = mpnt->vm_next;
1139         unsigned long start = mpnt->vm_start;
1140         unsigned long end = mpnt->vm_end;
1141         unsigned long size = end - start;
1142
1143         if (mpnt->vm_ops) {
1144             if (mpnt->vm_ops->close)
1145                 mpnt->vm_ops->close(mpnt);
1146         }
1147         mm->map_count--;
1148         remove_shared_vm_struct(mpnt);
1149         zap_page_range(mm, start, size);
1150         if (mpnt->vm_file)
1151             fput(mpnt->vm_file);
1152         kmem_cache_free(vm_area_cachep, mpnt);
1153         mpnt = next;
1154     }
1155     flush_tlb_mm(mm);
1156

```



```
1157      /* This is just debugging */
1158      if (mm->map_count)
1159          BUG();
1160
1161      clear_page_tables(mm, FIRST_USER_PGD_NR, USER_PTRS_PER_PGD);
1162 }
```

1126 `release_segments()` will release memory segments associated with the process on its Local Descriptor Table (LDT) if the architecture supports segments and the process was using them. Some applications, notably WINE use this feature

1127 Lock the mm

1128 `mpnt` becomes the first VMA on the list

1129 Clear VMA related information from the mm so it may be unlocked

1132 Unlock the mm

1133-1134 Clear the mm statistics

1136 Flush the CPU for the address range

1137-1154 Step through every VMA that was associated with the mm

1138 Record what the next VMA to clear will be so this one may be deleted

1139-1141 Record the start, end and size of the region to be deleted

1143-1146 If there is a close operation associated with this VMA, call it

1147 Reduce the map count

1148 Remove the file/device mapping from the shared mappings list

1149 Free all pages associated with this region

1150-1151 If a file/device was mapped in this region, free it

1152 Free the VMA struct

1153 Move to the next VMA

1155 Flush the TLB for this whole mm as it is about to be unmapped

1158-1159 If the `map_count` is positive, it means the map count was not accounted for properly so call `BUG` to mark it

1161 Clear the page tables associated with this region

## 5.4 Page Fault Handler

**Function:** `do_page_fault` (*arch/i386/mm/fault.c*)

This function is the x86 architecture dependent function for the handling of page fault exception handlers. Each architecture registers their own but all of them have similar responsibilities.

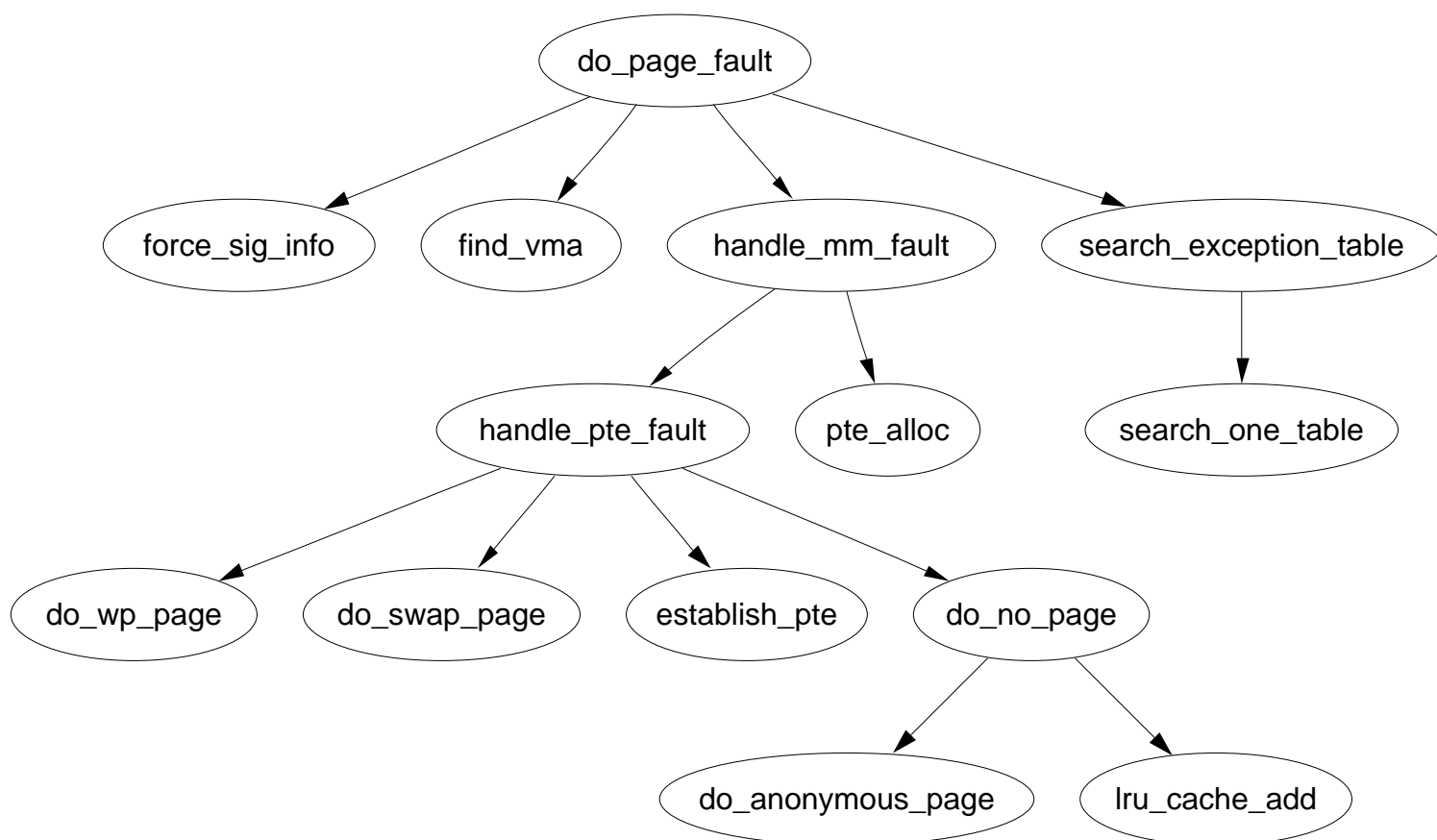


Figure 5.8: `do_page_fault`

```

140 asmlinkage void do_page_fault(struct pt_regs *regs,
                                unsigned long error_code)
141 {
142     struct task_struct *tsk;
143     struct mm_struct *mm;
144     struct vm_area_struct * vma;
145     unsigned long address;
146     unsigned long page;
147     unsigned long fixup;
148     int write;
149     siginfo_t info;
  
```

```

150
151     /* get the address */
152     __asm__("movl %%cr2,%0":"=r" (address));
153
154     /* It's safe to allow irq's after cr2 has been saved */
155     if (regs->eflags & X86_EFLAGS_IF)
156         local_irq_enable();
157
158     tsk = current;
159

```

Function preamble. Get the fault address and enable interrupts

140 The parameters are

`regs` is a struct containing what all the registers at fault time

`error_code` indicates what sort of fault occurred

152 As the comment indicates, the cr2 register is the fault address

155-156 If the fault is from within an interrupt, enable them

158 Set the current task

```

173     if (address >= TASK_SIZE && !(error_code & 5))
174         goto vmalloc_fault;
175
176     mm = tsk->mm;
177     info.si_code = SEGV_MAPERR;
178
183     if (in_interrupt() || !mm)
184         goto no_context;
185

```

Check for exceptional faults, kernel faults, fault in interrupt and fault with no memory context

173 If the fault address is over `TASK_SIZE`, it is within the kernel address space. If the error code is 5, then it means it happened while in kernel mode and is not a protection error so handle a vmalloc fault

176 Record the working mm

183 If this is an interrupt, or there is no memory context (such as with a kernel thread), there is no way to safely handle the fault so goto `no_context`

```

186         down_read(&mm->mmap_sem);
187
188         vma = find_vma(mm, address);
189         if (!vma)
190             goto bad_area;
191         if (vma->vm_start <= address)
192             goto good_area;
193         if (!(vma->vm_flags & VM_GROWSDOWN))
194             goto bad_area;
195         if (error_code & 4) {
196             /*
197              * accessing the stack below %esp is always a bug.
198              * The "+ 32" is there due to some instructions (like
199              * pusha) doing post-decrement on the stack and that
200              * doesn't show up until later..
201              */
202             if (address + 32 < regs->esp)
203                 goto bad_area;
204         }
205         if (expand_stack(vma, address))
206             goto bad_area;

```

If a fault in userspace, find the VMA for the faulting address and determine if it is a good area, a bad area or if the fault occurred near a region that can be expanded such as the stack

186 Take the long lived mm semaphore

188 Find the VMA that is responsible or is closest to the faulting address

189-190 If a VMA does not exist at all, goto bad\_area

191-192 If the start of the region is before the address, it means this VMA is the correct VMA for the fault so goto good\_area which will check the permissions

193-194 For the region that is closest, check if it can grow down (VM\_GROWSDOWN). If it does, it means the stack can probably be expanded. If not, goto bad\_area

195-204 Check to make sure it isn't an access below the stack. if the error\_code is 4, it means it is running in userspace

205-206 expand the stack, if it fails, goto bad\_area

```

211 good_area:
212         info.si_code = SEGV_ACCERR;
213         write = 0;
214         switch (error_code & 3) {

```

```

215             default:           /* 3: write, present */
216 #ifdef TEST_VERIFY_AREA
217             if (regs->cs == KERNEL_CS)
218                 printk("WP fault at %08lx\n", regs->eip);
219 #endif
220             /* fall through */
221             case 2:               /* write, not present */
222                 if (!(vma->vm_flags & VM_WRITE))
223                     goto bad_area;
224                 write++;
225                 break;
226             case 1:               /* read, present */
227                 goto bad_area;
228             case 0:               /* read, not present */
229                 if (!(vma->vm_flags & (VM_READ | VM_EXEC)))
230                     goto bad_area;
231     }

```

There is the first part of a good area is handled. The permissions need to be checked in case this is a protection fault.

212 By default return an error

214 Check the error code against bits 0 and 1 of the error code. Bit 0 at 0 means page was not present. At 1, it means a protection fault like a write to a read-only area. Bit 1 is 0 if it was a read fault and 1 if a write

215 If it is 3, both bits are 1 so it is a write protection fault

221 Bit 1 is a 1 so it is a write fault

222-223 If the region can not be written to, it is a bad write to goto bad\_area. If the region can be written to, this is a page that is marked Copy On Write (COW)

224 Flag that a write has occurred

226-227 This is a read and the page is present. There is no reason for the fault so must be some other type of exception like a divide by zero, goto bad\_area where it is handled

228-230 A read occurred on a missing page. Make sure it is ok to read or exec this page. If not, goto bad\_area. The check for exec is made because the x86 can not exec protect a page and instead uses the read protect flag. This is why both have to be checked

```

233 survive:
239     switch (handle_mm_fault(mm, vma, address, write)) {
240     case 1:
241         tsk->min_flt++;
242         break;
243     case 2:
244         tsk->maj_flt++;
245         break;
246     case 0:
247         goto do_sigbus;
248     default:
249         goto out_of_memory;
250     }
251
252     /*
253     * Did it hit the DOS screen memory VA from vm86 mode?
254     */
255     if (regs->eflags & VM_MASK) {
256         unsigned long bit = (address - 0xA0000) >> PAGE_SHIFT;
257         if (bit < 32)
258             tsk->thread.screen_bitmap |= 1 << bit;
259     }
260     up_read(&mm->mmap_sem);
261     return;

```

At this point, an attempt is going to be made to handle the fault gracefully with `handle_mm_fault()`.

239 Call `handle_mm_fault()` with the relevant information about the fault. This is the architecture independent part of the handler

240-242 A return of 1 means it was a minor fault. Update statistics

243-245 A return of 2 means it was a major fault. Update statistics

246-247 A return of 0 means some IO error happened during the fault so go to the `do_sigbus` handler

248-249 Any other return means memory could not be allocated for the fault so we are out of memory. In reality this does not happen as another function `out_of_memory()` is invoked in `mm/oom_kill.c` before this could happen which is a lot more graceful about who it kills

255-259 Not sure

260 Release the lock to the mm

261 Return as the fault has been successfully handled

```

267 bad_area:
268     up_read(&mm->mmap_sem);
269
270     /* User mode accesses just cause a SIGSEGV */
271     if (error_code & 4) {
272         tsk->thread.cr2 = address;
273         tsk->thread.error_code = error_code;
274         tsk->thread.trap_no = 14;
275         info.si_signo = SIGSEGV;
276         info.si_errno = 0;
277         /* info.si_code has been set above */
278         info.si_addr = (void *)address;
279         force_sig_info(SIGSEGV, &info, tsk);
280         return;
281     }
282
283     /*
284     * Pentium F0 0F C7 C8 bug workaround.
285     */
286     if (boot_cpu_data.f00f_bug) {
287         unsigned long nr;
288
289         nr = (address - idt) >> 3;
290
291         if (nr == 6) {
292             do_invalid_op(regs, 0);
293             return;
294         }
295     }

```

This is the bad area handler such as using memory with no `vm_area_struct` managing it. If the fault is not by a user process or the `f00f` bug, the `no_context` label is fallen through to.

271 An error code of 4 implies userspace so it is a simple case of sending a SIGSEGV to kill the process

272-274 Set thread information about what happened which can be read by a debugger later

275 Record that a SIGSEGV signal was sent

276 clear errno

278 Record the address

279 Send the SIGSEGV signal. The process will exit and dump all the relevant information

280 Return as the fault has been successfully handled

286-295 An bug in the first Pentiums was called the f00f bug which caused the processor to constantly page fault. It was used as a local DoS attack on a running Linux system. This bug was trapped within a few hours and a patch released. Now it results in a harmless termination of the process rather than a locked system

296

297 no\_context:

```
298     /* Are we prepared to handle this kernel fault? */
299     if ((fixup = search_exception_table(regs->eip)) != 0) {
300         regs->eip = fixup;
301         return;
302     }
```

299-302 Check can this exception be handled and if so, call the proper exception handler after returning. This is really important during `copy_from_user()` and `copy_to_user()` when an exception handler is especially installed to trap reads and writes to invalid regions in userspace without having to make expensive checks. It means that a small fixup block of code can be called rather than falling through to the next block which causes an oops

303

304 /\*

305 \* Oops. The kernel tried to access some bad page. We'll have to

306 \* terminate things with extreme prejudice.

307 \*/

308

309 bust\_spinlocks(1);

310

311 if (address < PAGE\_SIZE)

312 printk(KERN\_ALERT "Unable to handle kernel NULL pointer  
dereference");

313 else

314 printk(KERN\_ALERT "Unable to handle kernel paging  
request");

315 printk(" at virtual address %08lx\n", address);

316 printk(" printing eip:\n");

317 printk("%08lx\n", regs->eip);

318 asm("movl %%cr3,%0" : "=r" (page));

319 page = ((unsigned long \*) \_\_va(page))[address >> 22];

320 printk(KERN\_ALERT "\*pde = %08lx\n", page);



```

321         if (page & 1) {
322             page &= PAGE_MASK;
323             address &= 0x003ff000;
324             page = ((unsigned long *)
                    __va(page))[address >> PAGE_SHIFT];
325             printk(KERN_ALERT "*pte = %08lx\n", page);
326         }
327         die("Oops", regs, error_code);
328         bust_spinlocks(0);
329         do_exit(SIGKILL);

```

This is the `no_context` handler. Some bad exception occurred which is going to end up in the process been terminated in all likeliness. Otherwise the kernel faulted when it definitely should have and an OOPS report is generated.

309-329 Otherwise the kernel faulted when it really shouldn't have and it is a kernel bug. This block generates an oops report

309 Forcibly free spinlocks which might prevent a message getting to console

311-312 If the address is  $< \text{PAGE\_SIZE}$ , it means that a null pointer was used. Linux deliberately has page 0 unassigned to trap this type of fault which is a common programming error

313-314 Otherwise it is just some bad kernel error such as a driver trying to access userspace incorrectly

315-320 Print out information about the fault

321-326 Print out information about the page been faulted

327 Die and generate an oops report which can be used later to get a stack trace so a developer can see more accurately where and how the fault occurred

329 Forcibly kill the faulting process

```

335 out_of_memory:
336     if (tsk->pid == 1) {
337         yield();
338         goto survive;
339     }
340     up_read(&mm->mmap_sem);
341     printk("VM: killing process %s\n", tsk->comm);
342     if (error_code & 4)
343         do_exit(SIGKILL);
344     goto no_context;

```

The out of memory handler. Usually ends with the faulting process getting killed unless it is init

336-339 If the process is init, just yield and goto survive which will try to handle the fault gracefully. init should never be killed

340 Free the mm semaphore

341 Print out a helpful “You are Dead” message

342 If from userspace, just kill the process

344 If in kernel space, go to the no\_context handler which in this case will probably result in a kernel oops

345

346 do\_sigbus:

347       up\_read(&mm->mmap\_sem);

348

353       tsk->thread.cr2 = address;

354       tsk->thread.error\_code = error\_code;

355       tsk->thread.trap\_no = 14;

356       info.si\_signo = SIGBUS;

357       info.si\_errno = 0;

358       info.si\_code = BUS\_ADRERR;

359       info.si\_addr = (void \*)address;

360       force\_sig\_info(SIGBUS, &info, tsk);

361

362       /\* Kernel mode? Handle exceptions or die \*/

363       if (!(error\_code & 4))

364               goto no\_context;

365       return;

347 Free the mm lock

353-359 Fill in information to show a SIGBUS occurred at the faulting address so that a debugger can trap it later

360 Send the signal

363-364 If in kernel mode, try and handle the exception during no\_context

365 If in userspace, just return and the process will die in due course

367 vmalloc\_fault:

368       {

376               int offset = \_\_pgd\_offset(address);

377               pgd\_t \*pgd, \*pgd\_k;

```

378         pmd_t *pmd, *pmd_k;
379         pte_t *pte_k;
380
381         asm("movl %%cr3,%0":"=r" (pgd));
382         pgd = offset + (pgd_t *)__va(pgk);
383         pgd_k = init_mm.pgd + offset;
384
385         if (!pgd_present(*pgd_k))
386             goto no_context;
387         set_pgd(pgd, *pgd_k);
388
389         pmd = pmd_offset(pgd, address);
390         pmd_k = pmd_offset(pgd_k, address);
391         if (!pmd_present(*pmd_k))
392             goto no_context;
393         set_pmd(pmd, *pmd_k);
394
395         pte_k = pte_offset(pmd_k, address);
396         if (!pte_present(*pte_k))
397             goto no_context;
398         return;
399     }
400 }

```

This is the vmalloc fault handler. In this case the process page table needs to be synchronized with the reference page table. This could occur if a global TLB flush flushed some kernel page tables as well and the page table information just needs to be copied back in.

376 Get the offset within a PGD

381 Copy the address of the PGD for the process from the cr3 register to pgd

382 Calculate the pgd pointer from the process PGD

383 Calculate for the kernel reference PGD

385-386 If the pgd entry is invalid for the kernel page table, goto no\_context

386 Set the page table entry in the process page table with a copy from the kernel reference page table

389-393 Same idea for the PMD. Copy the page table entry from the kernel reference page table to the process page tables

395 Check the PTE

396-397 If it is not present, it means the page was not valid even in the kernel reference page table so goto `no_context` to handle what is probably a kernel bug, probably a reference to a random part of unused kernel space

398 Otherwise return knowing the process page tables have been updated and are in sync with the kernel page tables

## 5.4.1 Handling the Page Fault

This is the top level pair of functions for the architecture independent page fault handler.

**Function: `handle_mm_fault`** (*mm/memory.c*)

This function allocates the PMD and PTE necessary for this new PTE that is about to be allocated. It takes the necessary locks to protect the page tables before calling `handle_pte_fault()` to fault in the page itself.

```

1364 int handle_mm_fault(struct mm_struct *mm, struct vm_area_struct * vma,
1365                     unsigned long address, int write_access)
1366 {
1367     pgd_t *pgd;
1368     pmd_t *pmd;
1369
1370     current->state = TASK_RUNNING;
1371     pgd = pgd_offset(mm, address);
1372
1373     /*
1374      * We need the page table lock to synchronize with kswapd
1375      * and the SMP-safe atomic PTE updates.
1376      */
1377     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1378     pmd = pmd_alloc(mm, pgd, address);
1379
1380     if (pmd) {
1381         pte_t * pte = pte_alloc(mm, pmd, address);
1382         if (pte)
1383             return handle_pte_fault(mm, vma, address,
1384                                     write_access, pte);
1385     }
1386     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1387     return -1;
1388 }

```

1364 The parameters of the function are;

`mm` is the `mm_struct` for the faulting process

`vma` is the `vm_area_struct` managing the region the fault occurred in

`address` is the faulting address

`write_access` is 1 if the fault is a write fault

1370 Set the current state of the process

1371 Get the pgd entry from the top level page table

1377 Lock the `mm_struct` as the page tables will change

1378 `pmd_alloc` will allocate a `pmd_t` if one does not already exist

1380 If the `pmd` has been successfully allocated then...

1381 Allocate a PTE for this address if one does not already exist

1382-1383 Handle the page fault with `handle_pte_fault()` and return the status code

1385 Failure path, unlock the `mm_struct`

1386 Return -1 which will be interpreted as an out of memory condition which is correct as this line is only reached if a PMD or PTE could not be allocated

**Function: `handle_pte_fault`** (*mm/memory.c*)

This function decides what type of fault this is and which function should handle it. `do_no_page()` is called if this is the first time a page is to be allocated. `do_swap_page()` handles the case where the page was swapped out to disk. `do_wp_page()` breaks COW pages. If none of them are appropriate, the PTE entry is simply updated. If it was written to, it is marked dirty and it is marked accessed to show it is a young page.

```

1331 static inline int handle_pte_fault(struct mm_struct *mm,
1332     struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long address,
1333     int write_access, pte_t * pte)
1334 {
1335     pte_t entry;
1336
1337     entry = *pte;
1338     if (!pte_present(entry)) {
1339         /*
1340          * If it truly wasn't present, we know that kswapd
1341          * and the PTE updates will not touch it later. So
1342          * drop the lock.
1343          */
1344         if (pte_none(entry))
1345             return do_no_page(mm, vma, address,

```

```

                                write_access, pte);
1346         return do_swap_page(mm, vma, address, pte, entry,
                                write_access);
1347     }
1348
1349     if (write_access) {
1350         if (!pte_write(entry))
1351             return do_wp_page(mm, vma, address, pte, entry);
1352
1353         entry = pte_mkdirty(entry);
1354     }
1355     entry = pte_mkyoung(entry);
1356     establish_pte(vma, address, pte, entry);
1357     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1358     return 1;
1359 }

```

1331 The parameters of the function are the same as those for `handle_mm_fault()` except the PTE for the fault is included

1337 Record the PTE

1338 Handle the case where the PTE is not present

1344 If the PTE has never been filled, handle the allocation of the PTE with `do_no_page()`

1346 If the page has been swapped out to backing storage, handle it with `do_swap_page()`

1349-1354 Handle the case where the page is been written to

1350-1351 If the PTE is marked write-only, it is a COW page so handle it with `do_wp_page()`

1353 Otherwise just simply mark the page as dirty

1355 Mark the page as accessed

1356 `establish_pte()` copies the PTE and then updates the TLB and MMU cache. This does not copy in a new PTE but some architectures require the TLB and MMU update

1357 Unlock the `mm_struct` and return that a minor fault occurred

## 5.4.2 Demand Allocation

**Function:** `do_no_page` (*mm/memory.c*)

This function is called the first time a page is referenced so that it may be allocated and filled with data if necessary. If it is an anonymous page, determined by the lack of a `vm_ops` available to the VMA or the lack of a `nopage()` function, then `do_anonymous_page()` is called. Otherwise the supplied `nopage()` function is called to allocate a page and it is inserted into the page tables here. The function has the following tasks;

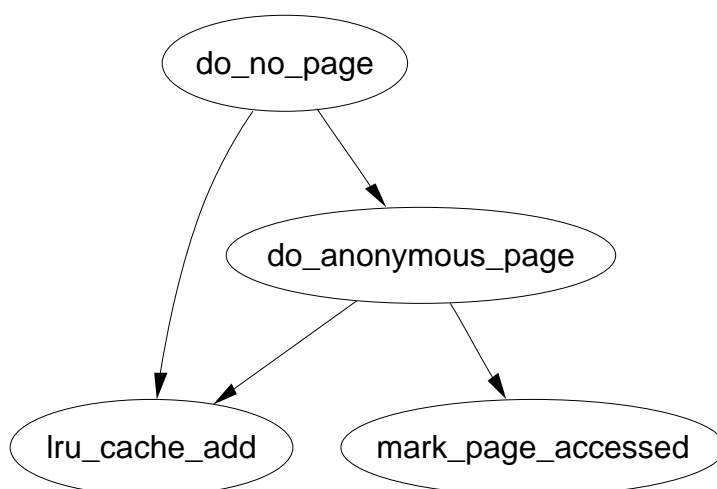


Figure 5.9: `do_no_page`

- Check if `do_anonymous_page()` should be used and if so, call it and return the page it allocates. If not, call the supplied `nopage()` function and ensure it allocates a page successfully.
- Break COW early if appropriate
- Add the page to the page table entries and call the appropriate architecture dependent hooks

```

1245 static int do_no_page(struct mm_struct * mm, struct vm_area_struct * vma,
1246     unsigned long address, int write_access, pte_t *page_table)
1247 {
1248     struct page * new_page;
1249     pte_t entry;
1250
1251     if (!vma->vm_ops || !vma->vm_ops->nopage)
1252         return do_anonymous_page(mm, vma, page_table,
1253                                 write_access, address);
1253     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
  
```

```

1254
1255     new_page = vma->vm_ops->nopage(vma, address & PAGE_MASK, 0);
1256
1257     if (new_page == NULL)    /* no page was available -- SIGBUS */
1258         return 0;
1259     if (new_page == NOPAGE_OOM)
1260         return -1;

```

1245 The parameters supplied are the same as those for `handle_pte_fault()`

1251-1252 If no `vm_ops` is supplied or no `nopage()` function is supplied, then call `do_anonymous_page()` to allocate a page and return it

1253 Otherwise free the page table lock as the `nopage()` function can not be called with spinlocks held

1255 Call the supplied `nopage` function, in the case of filesystems, this is frequently `filemap_nopage()` but will be different for each device driver

1257-1258 If `NULL` is returned, it means some error occurred in the `nopage` function such as an IO error while reading from disk. In this case, 0 is returned which results in a `SIGBUS` been sent to the faulting process

1259-1260 If `NOPAGE_OOM` is returned, the physical page allocator failed to allocate a page and -1 is returned which will forcibly kill the process

```

1265     if (write_access && !(vma->vm_flags & VM_SHARED)) {
1266         struct page * page = alloc_page(GFP_HIGHUSER);
1267         if (!page) {
1268             page_cache_release(new_page);
1269             return -1;
1270         }
1271         copy_user_highpage(page, new_page, address);
1272         page_cache_release(new_page);
1273         lru_cache_add(page);
1274         new_page = page;
1275     }

```

Break COW early in this block if appropriate. COW is broken if the fault is a write fault and the region is not shared with `VM_SHARED`. If COW was not broken in this case, a second fault would occur immediately upon return.

1265 Check if COW should be broken early

1266 If so, allocate a new page for the process

1267-1270 If the page could not be allocated, reduce the reference count to the page returned by the `nopage()` function and return -1 for out of memory



```

1271 Otherwise copy the contents

1272 Reduce the reference count to the returned page which may still be in use by
      another process

1273 Add the new page to the LRU lists so it may be reclaimed by kswapd later

1276
1277     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1288     /* Only go through if we didn't race with anybody else... */
1289     if (pte_none(*page_table)) {
1290         ++mm->rss;
1291         flush_page_to_ram(new_page);
1292         flush_icache_page(vma, new_page);
1293         entry = mk_pte(new_page, vma->vm_page_prot);
1294         if (write_access)
1295             entry = pte_mkwrite(pte_mkdirty(entry));
1296         set_pte(page_table, entry);
1297     } else {
1298         /* One of our sibling threads was faster, back out. */
1299         page_cache_release(new_page);
1300         spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1301         return 1;
1302     }
1303
1304     /* no need to invalidate: a not-present page shouldn't be cached
1305     */
1306     update_mmu_cache(vma, address, entry);
1307     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1308     return 2;      /* Major fault */
1309 }

```

1277 Lock the page tables again as the allocations have finished and the page tables are about to be updated

1289 Check if there is still no PTE in the entry we are about to use. If two faults hit here at the same time, it is possible another processor has already completed the page fault and this one should be backed out

1290-1297 If there is no PTE entered, complete the fault

1290 Increase the RSS count as the process is now using another page

1291 As the page is about to be mapped to the process space, it is possible for some architectures that writes to the page in kernel space will not be visible to the process. `flush_page_to_ram()` ensures the cache will be coherent

1292 `flush_icache_page()` is similar in principle except it ensures the icache and dcache's are coherent

1293 Create a `pte_t` with the appropriate permissions

1294-1295 If this is a write, then make sure the PTE has write permissions

1296 Place the new PTE in the process page tables

1297-1302 If the PTE is already filled, the page acquired from the `nopage()` function must be released

1299 Decrement the reference count to the page. If it drops to 0, it will be freed

1300-1301 Release the `mm_struct` lock and return 1 to signal this is a minor page fault as no major work had to be done for this fault as it was all done by the winner of the race

1305 Update the MMU cache for architectures that require it

1306-1307 Release the `mm_struct` lock and return 2 to signal this is a major page fault

**Function: `do_anonymous_page`** (*mm/memory.c*)

This function allocates a new page for a process accessing a page for the first time. If it is a read access, a system wide page containing only zeros is mapped into the process. If it is write, a zero filled page is allocated and placed within the page tables

```

1190 static int do_anonymous_page(struct mm_struct * mm,
                                struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                                pte_t *page_table, int write_access,
                                unsigned long addr)
1191 {
1192     pte_t entry;
1193
1194     /* Read-only mapping of ZERO_PAGE. */
1195     entry = pte_wrprotect(mk_pte(ZERO_PAGE(addr), vma->vm_page_prot));
1196
1197     /* ..except if it's a write access */
1198     if (write_access) {
1199         struct page *page;
1200
1201         /* Allocate our own private page. */
1202         spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1203
1204         page = alloc_page(GFP_HIGHUSER);
1205         if (!page)

```

```

1206             goto no_mem;
1207             clear_user_highpage(page, addr);
1208
1209             spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1210             if (!pte_none(*page_table)) {
1211                 page_cache_release(page);
1212                 spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1213                 return 1;
1214             }
1215             mm->rss++;
1216             flush_page_to_ram(page);
1217             entry = pte_mkwrite(
1218                 pte_mkdirty(mk_pte(page, vma->vm_page_prot)));
1219             lru_cache_add(page);
1220             mark_page_accessed(page);
1221         }
1222         set_pte(page_table, entry);
1223
1224         /* No need to invalidate - it was non-present before */
1225         update_mmu_cache(vma, addr, entry);
1226         spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1227         return 1;      /* Minor fault */
1228
1229 no_mem:
1230     return -1;
1231 }

```

1190 The parameters are the same as those passed to `handle_pte_fault()`

1195 For read accesses, simply map the system wide `empty_zero_page` which the `ZERO_PAGE` macro returns with the given permissions. The page is write protected so that a write to the page will result in a page fault

1198-1220 If this is a write fault, then allocate a new page and zero fill it

1202 Unlock the `mm_struct` as the allocation of a new page could sleep

1204 Allocate a new page

1205 If a page could not be allocated, return -1 to handle the OOM situation

1207 Zero fill the page

1209 Reacquire the lock as the page tables are to be updated

1216 Ensure the cache is coherent

- 1217 Mark the PTE writable and dirty as it has been written to
- 1218 Add the page to the LRU list so it may be reclaimed by the swapper later
- 1219 Mark the page accessed which ensures the page is marked hot and on the top of the active list
- 1222 Fix the PTE in the page tables for this process
- 1225 Update the MMU cache if the architecture needs it
- 1226 Free the page table lock
- 1227 Return as a minor fault as even though it is possible the page allocator spent time writing out pages, data did not have to be read from disk to fill this page

### 5.4.3 Demand Paging

**Function:** `do_swap_page` (*mm/memory.c*)

This function handles the case where a page has been swapped out. A swapped out page may exist in the swap cache if it is shared between a number of processes or recently swapped in during readahead. This function is broken up into three parts

- Search for the page in swap cache
- If it does not exist, call `swpin_readahead()` to read in the page
- Insert the page into the process page tables

```

1117 static int do_swap_page(struct mm_struct * mm,
1118     struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long address,
1119     pte_t * page_table, pte_t orig_pte, int write_access)
1120 {
1121     struct page *page;
1122     swp_entry_t entry = pte_to_swp_entry(orig_pte);
1123     pte_t pte;
1124     int ret = 1;
1125
1126     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1127     page = lookup_swap_cache(entry);

```

Function preamble, check for the page in the swap cache

- 1117-1119 The parameters are the same as those supplied to `handle_pte_fault()`
- 1122 Get the swap entry information from the PTE
- 1126 Free the `mm_struct` spinlock

```

1127 Lookup the page in the swap cache

1128     if (!page) {
1129         swapin_readahead(entry);
1130         page = read_swap_cache_async(entry);
1131         if (!page) {
1132             int retval;
1133             spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1134             retval = pte_same(*page_table, orig_pte) ? -1 :
1135             1;
1136             spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1137             return retval;
1138         }
1139         /* Had to read the page from swap area: Major fault */
1140         ret = 2;
1141     }
1142
1143
1144
1145

```

If the page did not exist in the swap cache, then read it from backing storage with `swapin_readahead()` which reads in the requested pages and a number of pages after it. Once it completes, `read_swap_cache_async()` should be able to return the page.

1128-1145 This block is executed if the page was not in the swap cache

1129 `swapin_readahead()` reads in the requested page and a number of pages after it. The number of pages read in is determined by the `page_cluster` variable in `mm/swap.c` which is initialised to 2 on machines with less than 16MiB of memory and 3 otherwise.  $2^{page\_cluster}$  pages are read in after the requested page unless a bad or empty page entry is encountered

1230 Look up the requested page

1131-1141 If the page does not exist, there was another fault which swapped in this page and removed it from the cache while spinlocks were dropped

1137 Lock the `mm_struct`

1138 Compare the two PTE's. If they do not match, -1 is returned to signal an IO error, else 1 is returned to mark a minor page fault as a disk access was not required for this particular page.

1139-1140 Free the `mm_struct` and return the status

1144 The disk had to be accessed to mark that this is a major page fault

```

1147     mark_page_accessed(page);
1148
1149     lock_page(page);
1150
1151     /*
1152     * Back out if somebody else faulted in this pte while we
1153     * released the page table lock.
1154     */
1155     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1156     if (!pte_same(*page_table, orig_pte)) {
1157         spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1158         unlock_page(page);
1159         page_cache_release(page);
1160         return 1;
1161     }
1162
1163     /* The page isn't present yet, go ahead with the fault. */
1164
1165     swap_free(entry);
1166     if (vm_swap_full())
1167         remove_exclusive_swap_page(page);
1168
1169     mm->rss++;
1170     pte = mk_pte(page, vma->vm_page_prot);
1171     if (write_access && can_share_swap_page(page))
1172         pte = pte_mkdirty(pte_mkwrite(pte));
1173     unlock_page(page);
1174
1175     flush_page_to_ram(page);
1176     flush_icache_page(vma, page);
1177     set_pte(page_table, pte);
1178
1179     /* No need to invalidate - it was non-present before */
1180     update_mmu_cache(vma, address, pte);
1181     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
1182     return ret;
1183 }

```

Place the page in the process page tables

1147 Mark the page as active so it will be moved to the top of the active LRU list

1149 Lock the page which has the side effect of waiting for the IO swapping in the page to complete

1155-1161 If someone else faulted in the page before we could, the reference to the page is dropped, the lock freed and return that this was a minor fault

- 1165 The function `swap_free()` reduces the reference to a swap entry. If it drops to 0, it is actually freed
- 1166-1167 Page slots in swap space are reserved for pages once they have been swapped out once if possible. If the swap space is full though, the reservation is broken and the slot freed up for another page
- 1169 The page is now going to be used so increment the `mm_struct`'s RSS count
- 1170 Make a PTE for this page
- 1171 If the page is been written to and it is shared between more than one process, mark it dirty so that it will be kept in sync with the backing storage and swap cache for other processes
- 1173 Unlock the page
- 1175 As the page is about to be mapped to the process space, it is possible for some architectures that writes to the page in kernel space will not be visible to the process. `flush_page_to_ram()` ensures the cache will be coherent
- 1176 `flush_icache_page()` is similar in principle except it ensures the icache and dcache's are coherent
- 1177 Set the PTE in the process page tables
- 1180 Update the MMU cache if the architecture requires it
- 1181-1182 Unlock the `mm_struct` and return whether it was a minor or major page fault

#### 5.4.4 Copy On Write (COW) Pages

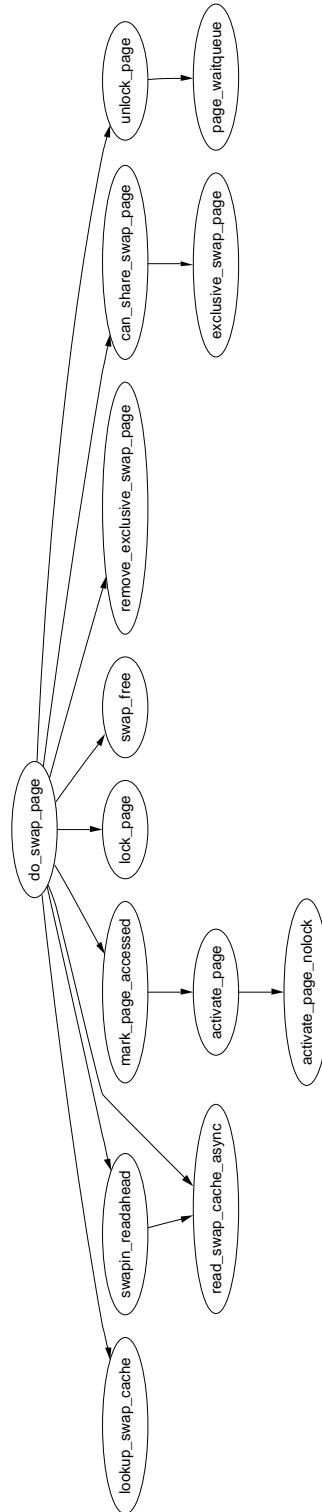


Figure 5.10: `do_swap_page`



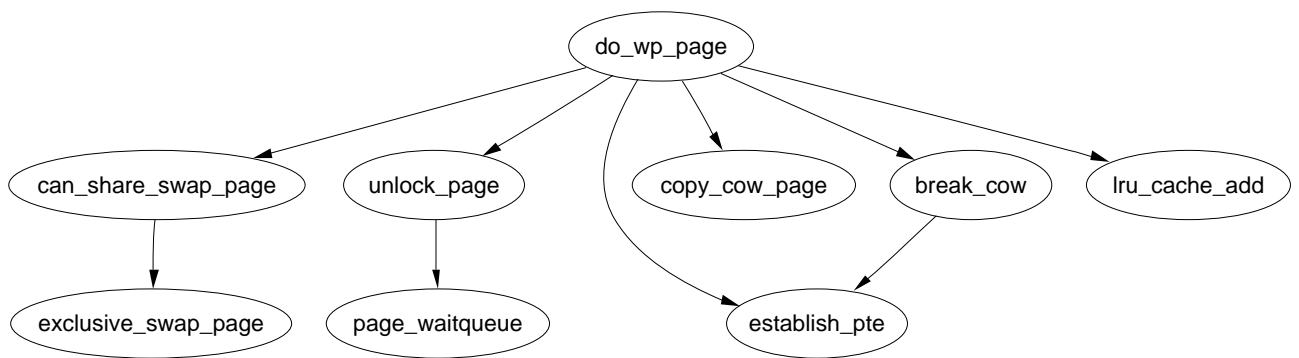


Figure 5.11: do\_wp\_page

# Chapter 6

## High Memory Management

### 6.1 Mapping High Memory Pages

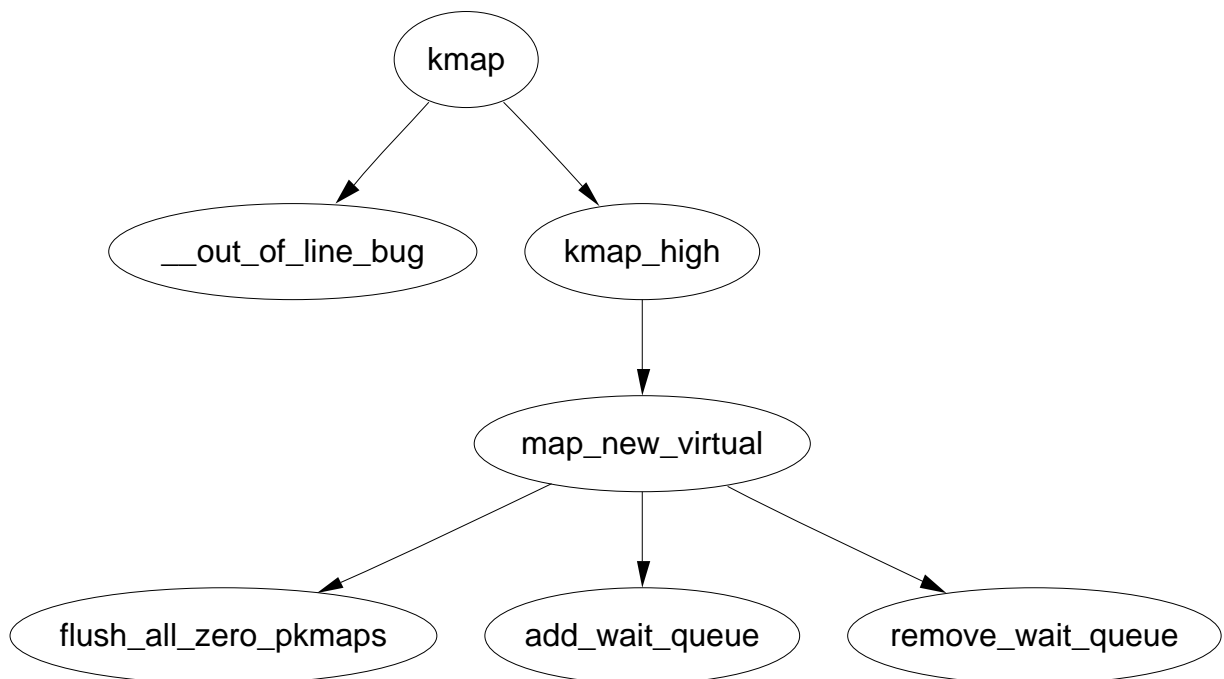


Figure 6.1: Call Graph: `kmap`

**Function:** `kmap` (*include/asm-i386/highmem.h*)

```
62 static inline void *kmap(struct page *page)
63 {
64     if (in_interrupt())
65         out_of_line_bug();
66     if (page < highmem_start_page)
```

```

67             return page_address(page);
68     return kmap_high(page);
69 }

```

64-65 This function may not be used from interrupt as it may sleep. `out_of_line_bug()` calls `do_exit()` and returns an error code. `BUG()` is not used because `BUG` kills the process with extreme prejudice which would result in the fabled “Aiee, killing interrupt handler!” kernel panic

66-67 If the page is already in low memory, return a direct mapping

68 Call `kmap_high()` for the beginning of the architecture independent work

**Function: `kmap_high`** (*mm/highmem.c*)

```

129 void *kmap_high(struct page *page)
130 {
131     unsigned long vaddr;
132
133     spin_lock(&kmap_lock);
134     vaddr = (unsigned long) page->virtual;
135     if (!vaddr)
136         vaddr = map_new_virtual(page);
137     pkmap_count[PKMAP_NR(vaddr)]++;
138     if (pkmap_count[PKMAP_NR(vaddr)] < 2)
139         BUG();
140     spin_unlock(&kmap_lock);
141     return (void*) vaddr;
142 }

```

139 The `kmap_lock` protects the `virtual` field of a page and the `pkmap_count` array

140 Get the virtual address of the page

141-142 If it is not already mapped, call `map_new_virtual()` which will map the page and return the virtual address

143 Increase the reference count for this page mapping

144-145 If the count is currently less than 2, it is a serious bug. In reality, severe breakage would have to be introduced to cause this to happen

146 Free the `kmap_lock`

**Function: map\_new\_virtual** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This function is divided into three principle parts. The scanning for a free slot, waiting on a queue if none is available and mapping the page.

```

80 static inline unsigned long map_new_virtual(struct page *page)
81 {
82     unsigned long vaddr;
83     int count;
84
85 start:
86     count = LAST_PKMAP;
87     /* Find an empty entry */
88     for (;;) {
89         last_pkmap_nr = (last_pkmap_nr + 1) & LAST_PKMAP_MASK;
90         if (!last_pkmap_nr) {
91             flush_all_zero_pkmaps();
92             count = LAST_PKMAP;
93         }
94         if (!pkmap_count[last_pkmap_nr])
95             break; /* Found a usable entry */
96         if (--count)
97             continue;
98

```

86 Start scanning at the last possible slot

88-119 This loop keeps scanning and waiting until a slot becomes free. This allows the possibility of an infinite loop for some processes if they were unlucky

89 `last_pkmap_nr` is the last pkmap that was scanned. To prevent searching over the same pages, this value is recorded so the list is searched circularly. When it reaches `LAST_PKMAP`, it wraps around to 0

90-93 When `last_pkmap_nr` wraps around, call `flush_all_zero_pkmaps()` which will set all entries from 1 to 0 in the `pkmap_count` array before flushing the TLB. Count is set back to `LAST_PKMAP` to restart scanning

94-95 If this element is 0, a usable slot has been found for the page

96-96 Move to the next index to scan

```

102     {
103         DECLARE_WAITQUEUE(wait, current);
104
105         current->state = TASK_UNINTERRUPTIBLE;
106         add_wait_queue(&pkmap_map_wait, &wait);
107         spin_unlock(&kmap_lock);

```

```

108         schedule();
109         remove_wait_queue(&pkmap_map_wait, &wait);
110         spin_lock(&kmap_lock);
111
112         /* Somebody else might have mapped it while we
113            slept */
113         if (page->virtual)
114             return (unsigned long) page->virtual;
115
116         /* Re-start */
117         goto start;
118     }
119 }
```

If there is no available slot after scanning all the pages once, we sleep on the `pkmap_map_wait` queue until we are woken up after an unmap

```

103 Declare the wait queue

105 Set the task as interruptible because we are sleeping in kernel space

106 Add ourselves to the pkmap_map_wait queue

107 Free the kmap_lock spinlock

108 Call schedule() which will put us to sleep. We are woken up after a slot
    becomes free after an unmap

109 Remove ourselves from the ait queue

110 Re-acquire kmap_lock

113-114 If someone else mapped the page while we slept, just return the address
    and the reference count will be incremented by kmap_high()

117 Restart the scanning

120     vaddr = PKMAP_ADDR(last_pkmap_nr);
121     set_pte(&(pkmap_page_table[last_pkmap_nr]), mk_pte(page,
122                kmap_prot));
123
123     pkmap_count[last_pkmap_nr] = 1;
124     page->virtual = (void *) vaddr;
125
126     return vaddr;
127 }
```

A slot has been found, map the page

- 120 Get the virtual address for the slot found
- 121 Make the PTE entry with the page and required protection and place it in the page tables at the found slot
- 123 Initialise the value in the `pkmap_count` array to 1. The count is incremented in the parent function and we are sure this is the first mapping if we are in this function in the first place
- 124 Set the `virtual` field for the page
- 126 Return the virtual address

**Function: `flush_all_zero_pkmaps`** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This function cycles through the `pkmap_count` array and sets all entries from 1 to 0 before flushing the TLB.

```

42 static void flush_all_zero_pkmaps(void)
43 {
44     int i;
45
46     flush_cache_all();
47
48     for (i = 0; i < LAST_PKMAP; i++) {
49         struct page *page;
50
51         if (pkmap_count[i] != 1)
52             continue;
53         pkmap_count[i] = 0;
54
55         /* sanity check */
56         if (pte_none(pkmap_page_table[i]))
57             BUG();
58
59         page = pte_page(pkmap_page_table[i]);
60         pte_clear(&pkmap_page_table[i]);
61
62         page->virtual = NULL;
63     }
64     flush_tlb_all();
65 }

```

- 46 As the global page tables are about to change, the CPU caches of all processors have to be flushed

48-76 Cycle through the entire `pkmap_count` array

57-58 If the element is not 1, move to the next element

59 Set from 1 to 0

62-63 Make sure the PTE is not somehow mapped

72-73 Unmap the page from the PTE and clear the PTE

75 Update the virtual field as the page is unmapped

77 Flush the TLB

### 6.1.1 Unmapping Pages

**Function: kunmap** (*include/asm-i386/highmem.h*)

```

71 static inline void kunmap(struct page *page)
72 {
73     if (in_interrupt())
74         out_of_line_bug();
75     if (page < highmem_start_page)
76         return;
77     kunmap_high(page);
78 }
```

73-74 kunmap() cannot be called from interrupt so exit gracefully

75-76 If the page already is in low memory, there is no need to unmap

77 Call the architecture independent function kunmap\_high()

**Function: kunmap\_high** (*mm/highmem.c*)

```

150 void kunmap_high(struct page *page)
151 {
152     unsigned long vaddr;
153     unsigned long nr;
154     int need_wakeup;
155
156     spin_lock(&kmap_lock);
157     vaddr = (unsigned long) page->virtual;
158     if (!vaddr)
159         BUG();
160     nr = PKMAP_NR(vaddr);
161
162     need_wakeup = 0;
163     switch (--pkmap_count[nr]) {
164     case 0:
```

```

169             BUG();
170     case 1:
181         need_wakeup = waitqueue_active(&pkmap_map_wait);
182     }
183     spin_unlock(&kmap_lock);
184
185     /* do wake-up, if needed, race-free outside of the spin lock */
186     if (need_wakeup)
187         wake_up(&pkmap_map_wait);
188 }

```

156 Acquire `kmap_lock` protecting the `virtual()` field and the `pkmap_count` array

157 Get the virtual page

158-159 If the virtual field is not set, it is a double unmapping or unmapping of a non-mapped page so `BUG()`

160 Get the index within the `pkmap_count` array

166 By default, a wakeup call to processes calling `kmap()` is not needed

167 Check the value of the index after decrement

168-169 Falling to 0 is a bug as the TLB needs to be flushed to make 0 a valid entry

170-181 If it has dropped to 1 (free entry but needs TLB flush), check to see if there is anyone sleeping on the `pkmap_map_wait` queue. If necessary, the queue will be woken up after the spinlock is freed

183 Free `kmap_lock`

186-187 If there is waiters on the queue and a slot has been freed, wake them up

## 6.2 Mapping High Memory Pages Atomically

The following is an example `km_type` enumeration for the x86. It lists the different uses interrupts have for atomically calling `kmap`. Note how `KM_TYPE_NR` is the last element so it doubles up as a count of the number of elements.

```

4 enum km_type {
5     KM_BOUNCE_READ,
6     KM_SKB_SUNRPC_DATA,
7     KM_SKB_DATA_SOFTIRQ,
8     KM_USER0,
9     KM_USER1,

```



```

10         KM_BH_IRQ,
11         KM_TYPE_NR
12 };

```

**Function: `kmap_atomic`** (*include/asm-i386/highmem.h*)

This is the atomic version of `kmap()`. Note that at no point is a spinlock held or does it sleep. A spinlock is not required as every processor has its own reserved space.

```

86 static inline void *kmap_atomic(struct page *page, enum km_type type)
87 {
88     enum fixed_addresses idx;
89     unsigned long vaddr;
90
91     if (page < highmem_start_page)
92         return page_address(page);
93
94     idx = type + KM_TYPE_NR*smp_processor_id();
95     vaddr = __fix_to_virt(FIX_KMAP_BEGIN + idx);
96 #if HIGHMEM_DEBUG
97     if (!pte_none(*(kmap_pte-idx)))
98         out_of_line_bug();
99 #endif
100    set_pte(kmap_pte-idx, mk_pte(page, kmap_prot));
101    __flush_tlb_one(vaddr);
102
103    return (void*) vaddr;
104 }

```

86 The parameters are the page to map and the type of usage required. One slot per usage per processor is maintained

91-92 If the page is in low memory, return a direct mapping

94 `type` gives which slot to use. `KM_TYPE_NR * smp_processor_id()` gives the set of slots reserved for this processor

95 Get the virtual address

97-98 Debugging code. In reality a PTE will always exist

100 Set the PTE into the reserved slot

101 Flush the TLB for this slot

103 Return the virtual address

**Function: kunmap\_atomic** (*include/asm-i386/highmem.h*)

This entire function is debug code. The reason is that as pages are only mapped here atomically, they will only be used in a tiny place for a short time before being unmapped. It is safe to leave the page there as it will not be referenced after unmapping and another mapping to the same slot will simply replace it.

```

106 static inline void kunmap_atomic(void *kvaddr, enum km_type type)
107 {
108 #if HIGHMEM_DEBUG
109     unsigned long vaddr = (unsigned long) kvaddr;
110     enum fixed_addresses idx = type + KM_TYPE_NR*smp_processor_id();
111
112     if (vaddr < FIXADDR_START) // FIXME
113         return;
114
115     if (vaddr != __fix_to_virt(FIX_KMAP_BEGIN+idx))
116         out_of_line_bug();
117
118     /*
119     * force other mappings to Oops if they'll try to access
120     * this pte without first remap it
121     */
122     pte_clear(kmap_pte-idx);
123     __flush_tlb_one(vaddr);
124 #endif
125 }
```

109 Get the virtual address

112-113 If the address supplied is not in the fixed area, return

115-116 If the address does not correspond to the reserved slot for this type of usage and processor, declare it

122-123 Unmap the page now so that if it is referenced again, it will cause an Oops

## 6.3 Bounce Buffers

**Function: create\_buffers** (*mm/highmem.c*)

High level function for the creation of bounce buffers. It is broken into two major parts, the allocation of the necessary resources, and the copying of data from the template.

```

398 struct buffer_head * create_bounce(int rw, struct buffer_head * bh_orig)
399 {
400     struct page *page;
```

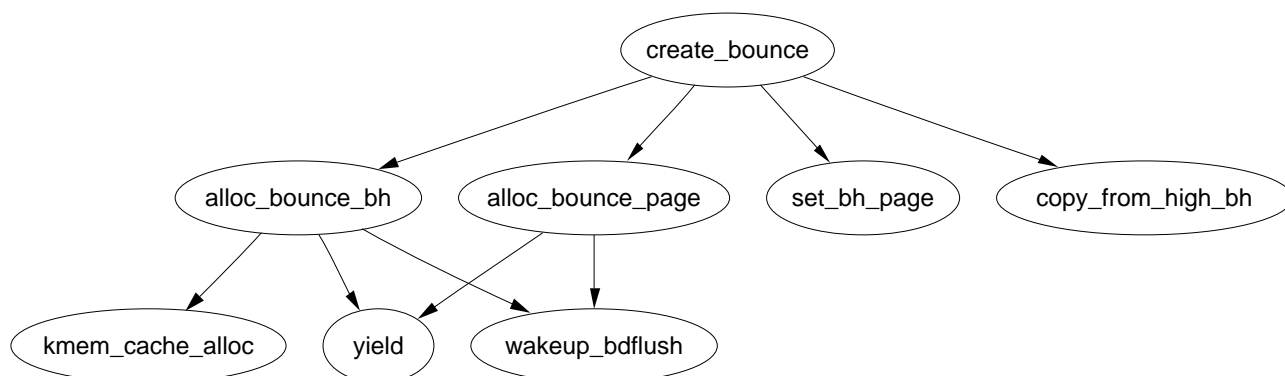


Figure 6.2: Call Graph: create\_bounce

```

401     struct buffer_head *bh;
402
403     if (!PageHighMem(bh_orig->b_page))
404         return bh_orig;
405
406     bh = alloc_bounce_bh();
413     page = alloc_bounce_page();
414
415     set_bh_page(bh, page, 0);
416

```

398 The parameters of the function are

`rw` is set to 1 if this is a write buffer

`bh_orig` is the template buffer head to copy from

403-404 If the template buffer head is already in low memory, simply return it

406 Allocate a buffer head from the slab allocator or from the emergency pool if it fails

413 Allocate a page from the buddy allocator or the emergency pool if it fails

415 Associate the allocated page with the allocated `buffer_head`

```

417     bh->b_next = NULL;
418     bh->b_blocknr = bh_orig->b_blocknr;
419     bh->b_size = bh_orig->b_size;
420     bh->b_list = -1;
421     bh->b_dev = bh_orig->b_dev;
422     bh->b_count = bh_orig->b_count;
423     bh->b_rdev = bh_orig->b_rdev;
424     bh->b_state = bh_orig->b_state;

```

```

425 #ifdef HIGHMEM_DEBUG
426     bh->b_flushtime = jiffies;
427     bh->b_next_free = NULL;
428     bh->b_prev_free = NULL;
429     /* bh->b_this_page */
430     bh->b_reqnext = NULL;
431     bh->b_pprev = NULL;
432 #endif
433     /* bh->b_page */
434     if (rw == WRITE) {
435         bh->b_end_io = bounce_end_io_write;
436         copy_from_high_bh(bh, bh_orig);
437     } else
438         bh->b_end_io = bounce_end_io_read;
439     bh->b_private = (void *)bh_orig;
440     bh->b_rsector = bh_orig->b_rsector;
441 #ifdef HIGHMEM_DEBUG
442     memset(&bh->b_wait, -1, sizeof(bh->b_wait));
443 #endif
444
445     return bh;
446 }

```

Populate the newly created `buffer_head`

424 Copy in information essentially verbatim except for the `b_list` field as this buffer is not directly connected to the others on the list

426-431 Debugging only information

434-437 If this is a buffer that is to be written to then the callback function to end the IO is `bounce_end_io_write()` which is called when the device has received all the information. As the data exists in high memory, it is copied “down” with `copy_from_high_bh()`

437-438 If we are waiting for a device to write data into the buffer, then the callback function `bounce_end_io_read()` is used

439-440 Copy the remaining information from the template `buffer_head`

445 Return the new bounce buffer

**Function: `alloc_bounce_bh`** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This function first tries to allocate a `buffer_head` from the slab allocator and if that fails, an emergency pool will be used.

```

362 struct buffer_head *alloc_bounce_bh (void)
363 {
364     struct list_head *tmp;
365     struct buffer_head *bh;
366
367     bh = kmem_cache_alloc(bh_cachep, SLAB_NOHIGHIO);
368     if (bh)
369         return bh;
373
374     wakeup_bdflush();

```

367 Try to allocate a new `buffer_head` from the slab allocator. Note how the request is made to *not* use IO operations that involve high IO to avoid recursion

368-369 If the allocation was successful, return

374 If it was not, wake up `bdflush` to launder pages

```

375
376 repeat_alloc:
380     tmp = &emergency_bhs;
381     spin_lock_irq(&emergency_lock);
382     if (!list_empty(tmp)) {
383         bh = list_entry(tmp->next, struct buffer_head,
384                         b_inode_buffers);
384         list_del(tmp->next);
385         nr_emergency_bhs--;
386     }
387     spin_unlock_irq(&emergency_lock);
388     if (bh)
389         return bh;
390
391     /* we need to wait I/O completion */
392     run_task_queue(&tq_disk);
393
394     yield();
395     goto repeat_alloc;
396 }

```

The allocation from the slab failed so allocate from the emergency pool.

380 Get the end of the emergency buffer head list

381 Acquire the lock protecting the pools

382-386 If the pool is not empty, take a `buffer_head` from the list and decrement the `nr_emergency_bhs` counter

387 Release the lock

388-389 If the allocation was successful, return it

392 If not, we are seriously short of memory and the only way the pool will replenish is if high memory IO completes. Therefore, requests on `tq_disk` are started so the data will be written to disk, probably freeing up pages in the process

394 Yield the processor

395 Attempt to allocate from the emergency pools again

**Function: `alloc_bounce_page`** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This function is essentially identical to `alloc_bounce_bh()` It first tries to allocate a page from the buddy allocator and if that fails, an emergency pool will be used.

```

326 struct page *alloc_bounce_page (void)
327 {
328     struct list_head *tmp;
329     struct page *page;
330
331     page = alloc_page(GFP_NOHIGHIO);
332     if (page)
333         return page;
337
338     wakeup_bdflush();

331-333 Allocate from the buddy allocator and return the page if successful

338 Wake bdflush to launder pages

339
340 repeat_alloc:
344     tmp = &emergency_pages;
345     spin_lock_irq(&emergency_lock);
346     if (!list_empty(tmp)) {
347         page = list_entry(tmp->next, struct page, list);
348         list_del(tmp->next);
349         nr_emergency_pages--;
350     }
351     spin_unlock_irq(&emergency_lock);
352     if (page)
353         return page;
354
355     /* we need to wait I/O completion */
356     run_task_queue(&tq_disk);

```

```

357
358     yield();
359     goto repeat_alloc;
360 }
344 Get the end of the emergency buffer head list
334 Acquire the lock protecting the pools
346-350 If the pool is not empty, take a page from the list and decrement the
      nr_emergency_pages counter
351 Release the lock
352-353 If the allocation was successful, return it
356 Run the IO task queue to try and replenish the emergency pool
394 Yield the processor
395 Attempt to allocate from the emergency pools again

```

### 6.3.1 Copying via Bounce Buffers

**Function: bounce\_end\_io\_write** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This function is called when a bounce buffer used for writing to a device completes IO. As the buffer is copied *from* high memory and to the device, there is nothing left to do except reclaim the resources

```

312 static void bounce_end_io_write (struct buffer_head *bh, int uptodate)
313 {
314     bounce_end_io(bh, uptodate);
315 }

```

**Function: bounce\_end\_io\_read** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This is called when data has been read from the device and needs to be copied to high memory. It is called from interrupt so has to be more careful

```

317 static void bounce_end_io_read (struct buffer_head *bh, int uptodate)
318 {
319     struct buffer_head *bh_orig =
320         (struct buffer_head *) (bh->b_private);
321     if (uptodate)
322         copy_to_high_bh_irq(bh_orig, bh);
323     bounce_end_io(bh, uptodate);
324 }

```

321-322 The data is just copied to the bounce buffer to needs to be moved to high memory with `copy_to_high_bh_irq()`

323 Reclaim the resources

**Function: copy\_from\_high\_bh** (*mm/highmem.c*)

This function copies data from a high memory `buffer_head` to a bounce buffer.

```

208 static inline void copy_from_high_bh (struct buffer_head *to,
209                                     struct buffer_head *from)
210 {
211     struct page *p_from;
212     char *vfrom;
213
214     p_from = from->b_page;
215
216     vfrom = kmap_atomic(p_from, KM_USER0);
217     memcpy(to->b_data, vfrom + bh_offset(from), to->b_size);
218     kunmap_atomic(vfrom, KM_USER0);
219 }

```

216 Map the high memory page into low memory. This path is protected by the IRQ safe lock `io_request_lock` so it is safe to call `kmap_atomic()`

217 Copy the data

218 Unmap the page

**Function: copy\_to\_high\_bh\_irq** (*mm/highmem.c*)

Called from interrupt after the device has finished writing data to the bounce buffer. This function copies data to high memory

```

221 static inline void copy_to_high_bh_irq (struct buffer_head *to,
222                                       struct buffer_head *from)
223 {
224     struct page *p_to;
225     char *vto;
226     unsigned long flags;
227
228     p_to = to->b_page;
229     __save_flags(flags);
230     __cli();
231     vto = kmap_atomic(p_to, KM_BOUNCE_READ);
232     memcpy(vto + bh_offset(to), from->b_data, to->b_size);
233     kunmap_atomic(vto, KM_BOUNCE_READ);
234     __restore_flags(flags);
235 }

```

229-230 Save the flags and disable interrupts

231 Map the high memory page into low memory



232 Copy the data

233 Unmap the page

234 Restore the interrupt flags

**Function: bounce\_end\_io** (*mm/highmem.c*)

Reclaims the resources used by the bounce buffers. If emergency pools are depleted, the resources are added to it.

```

237 static inline void bounce_end_io (struct buffer_head *bh, int uptodate)
238 {
239     struct page *page;
240     struct buffer_head *bh_orig =
                (struct buffer_head *) (bh->b_private);
241     unsigned long flags;
242
243     bh_orig->b_end_io(bh_orig, uptodate);
244
245     page = bh->b_page;
246
247     spin_lock_irqsave(&emergency_lock, flags);
248     if (nr_emergency_pages >= POOL_SIZE)
249         __free_page(page);
250     else {
251         /*
252          * We are abusing page->list to manage
253          * the highmem emergency pool:
254          */
255         list_add(&page->list, &emergency_pages);
256         nr_emergency_pages++;
257     }
258
259     if (nr_emergency_bhs >= POOL_SIZE) {
260 #ifdef HIGHMEM_DEBUG
261         /* Don't clobber the constructed slab cache */
262         init_waitqueue_head(&bh->b_wait);
263 #endif
264         kmem_cache_free(bh_cachep, bh);
265     } else {
266         /*
267          * Ditto in the bh case, here we abuse b_inode_buffers:
268          */
269         list_add(&bh->b_inode_buffers, &emergency_bhs);
270         nr_emergency_bhs++;
271     }

```

```

272         spin_unlock_irqrestore(&emergency_lock, flags);
273     }

```

243 Call the IO completion callback for the original `buffer_head`

245 Get the pointer to the buffer page to free

247 Acquire the lock to the emergency pool

248-249 If the page pool is full, just return the page to the buddy allocator

250-257 Otherwise add this page to the emergency pool

259-265 If the `buffer_head` pool is full, just return it to the slab allocator

265-271 Otherwise add this `buffer_head` to the pool

272 Release the lock

## 6.4 Emergency Pools

There is only one function of relevance to the emergency pools and that is the `init` function. It is called during system startup and then the code is deleted as it is never needed again

**Function:** `init_emergency_pool` (*mm/highmem.c*)

Create a pool for emergency pages and for emergency `buffer_heads`

```

275 static __init int init_emergency_pool(void)
276 {
277     struct sysinfo i;
278     si_meminfo(&i);
279     si_swapinfo(&i);
280
281     if (!i.totalhigh)
282         return 0;
283
284     spin_lock_irq(&emergency_lock);
285     while (nr_emergency_pages < POOL_SIZE) {
286         struct page * page = alloc_page(GFP_ATOMIC);
287         if (!page) {
288             printk("couldn't refill highmem emergency pages");
289             break;
290         }
291         list_add(&page->list, &emergency_pages);
292         nr_emergency_pages++;
293     }

```

281-282 If there is no high memory available, do not bother

284 Acquire the lock protecting the pools

285-293 Allocate POOL\_SIZE pages from the buddy allocator and add them to a linked list. Keep a count of the number of pages in the pool with `nr_emergency_pages`

```
294         while (nr_emergency_bhs < POOL_SIZE) {
295             struct buffer_head * bh = kmem_cache_alloc(bh_cache,
SLAB_ATOMIC);
296             if (!bh) {
297                 printk("couldn't refill highmem emergency bhs");
298                 break;
299             }
300             list_add(&bh->b_inode_buffers, &emergency_bhs);
301             nr_emergency_bhs++;
302         }
303         spin_unlock_irq(&emergency_lock);
304         printk("allocated %d pages and %d bhs reserved for the
           highmem bounces\n",
305             nr_emergency_pages, nr_emergency_bhs);
306
307         return 0;
308 }
```

294-302 Allocate POOL\_SIZE `buffer_heads` from the slab allocator and add them to a linked list linked by `b_inode_buffers`. Keep track of how many heads are in the pool with `nr_emergency_bhs`

303 Release the lock protecting the pools

307 Return success

# Chapter 7

## Page Frame Reclamation

### 7.1 Page Swap Daemon

**Function: kswapd\_init** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Start the kswapd kernel thread

```
767 static int __init kswapd_init(void)
768 {
769     printk("Starting kswapd\n");
770     swap_setup();
771     kernel_thread(kswapd, NULL, CLONE_FS | CLONE_FILES | CLONE_SIGNAL);
772     return 0;
773 }
```

770 `swap_setup()` setups up how many pages will be prefetched when reading from backing storage based on the amount of physical memory

771 Start the kswapd kernel thread

**Function: kswapd** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

The main function of the kswapd kernel thread.

```
720 int kswapd(void *unused)
721 {
722     struct task_struct *tsk = current;
723     DECLARE_WAITQUEUE(wait, tsk);
724
725     daemonize();
726     strcpy(tsk->comm, "kswapd");
727     sigfillset(&tsk->blocked);
728
741     tsk->flags |= PF_MEMALLOC;
742
746     for (;;) {
```

```

747         __set_current_state(TASK_INTERRUPTIBLE);
748         add_wait_queue(&kswapd_wait, &wait);
749
750         mb();
751         if (kswapd_can_sleep())
752             schedule();
753
754         __set_current_state(TASK_RUNNING);
755         remove_wait_queue(&kswapd_wait, &wait);
756
757         kswapd_balance();
758         run_task_queue(&tq_disk);
759     }
760 }

```

725 Call `daemonize()` which will make this a kernel thread, remove the mm context, close all files and re-parent the process

726 Set the name of the process

727 Ignore all signals

741 By setting this flag, the physical page allocator will always try to satisfy requests for pages. As this process will always be trying to free pages, it is worth satisfying requests

746-764 Endlessly loop

747-748 This adds `kswapd` to the wait queue in preparation to sleep

750 The Memory Block (`mb`) function ensures that all reads and writes that occurred before this line will be visible to all CPU's

751 `kswapd_can_sleep()` cycles through all nodes and zones checking the `need_balance` field. If any of them are set to 1, `kswapd` can not sleep

752 By calling `schedule`, `kswapd` will sleep until woken again by the physical page allocator

754-755 Once woken up, `kswapd` is removed from the wait queue as it is now running

762 `kswapd_balance()` cycles through all zones and calls `try_to_free_pages_zone()` for each zone that requires balance

763 Run the task queue for processes waiting to write to disk

**Function: kswapd\_can\_sleep** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Simple function to cycle through all pgdats to call `kswapd_can_sleep_pgdat()` on each.

```

695 static int kswapd_can_sleep(void)
696 {
697     pg_data_t * pgdat;
698
699     for_each_pgdat(pgdat) {
700         if (!kswapd_can_sleep_pgdat(pgdat))
701             return 0;
702     }
703
704     return 1;
705 }

```

699-702 `for_each_pgdat()` does exactly as the name implies. It cycles through all available `pgdat`'s. On the x86, there will only be one

**Function: kswapd\_can\_sleep\_pgdat** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Cycles through all zones to make sure none of them need balance.

```

680 static int kswapd_can_sleep_pgdat(pg_data_t * pgdat)
681 {
682     zone_t * zone;
683     int i;
684
685     for (i = pgdat->nr_zones-1; i >= 0; i--) {
686         zone = pgdat->node_zones + i;
687         if (!zone->need_balance)
688             continue;
689         return 0;
690     }
691
692     return 1;
693 }

```

685-689 Simple for loop to cycle through all zones

686 The `node_zones` field is an array of all available zones so adding `i` gives the index

687-688 If the zone does not need balance, continue

689 0 is returned if any needs balance indicating `kswapd` can not sleep

692 Return indicating `kswapd` can sleep if the for loop completes

**Function: kswapd\_balance** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Continuously cycle through each pgdat until none require balancing

```

667 static void kswapd_balance(void)
668 {
669     int need_more_balance;
670     pg_data_t * pgdat;
671
672     do {
673         need_more_balance = 0;
674
675         for_each_pgdat(pgdat)
676             need_more_balance |= kswapd_balance_pgdat(pgdat);
677     } while (need_more_balance);
678 }

```

672-677 Continuously cycle through each pgdat

675 For each pgdat, call kswapd\_balance\_pgdat(). If any of them had required balancing, need\_more\_balance will be equal to 1

**Function: kswapd\_balance\_pgdat** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

```

641 static int kswapd_balance_pgdat(pg_data_t * pgdat)
642 {
643     int need_more_balance = 0, i;
644     zone_t * zone;
645
646     for (i = pgdat->nr_zones-1; i >= 0; i--) {
647         zone = pgdat->node_zones + i;
648         if (unlikely(current->need_resched))
649             schedule();
650         if (!zone->need_balance)
651             continue;
652         if (!try_to_free_pages_zone(zone, GFP_KSWAPD)) {
653             zone->need_balance = 0;
654             __set_current_state(TASK_INTERRUPTIBLE);
655             schedule_timeout(HZ);
656             continue;
657         }
658         if (check_classzone_need_balance(zone))
659             need_more_balance = 1;
660         else
661             zone->need_balance = 0;
662     }
663 }

```

```
664         return need_more_balance;
665 }
```

646-662 Cycle through each zone and call `try_to_free_pages_zone()` if it needs re-balancing

647 `node_zones` is an array and `i` is an index within it

648-649 Call `schedule()` if the quanta is expired to prevent `kswapd` hogging the CPU

650-651 If the zone does not require balance, move to the next one

652-657 If the function returns 0, it means the `out_of_memory()` function was called because a sufficient number of pages could not be freed. `kswapd` sleeps for 1 second to give the system a chance to reclaim the killed processes pages

658-661 If it was successful, `check_classzone_need_balance()` is called to see if the zone requires further balancing or not

664 Return 1 if one zone requires further balancing

## 7.2 Page Cache

**Function: `lru_cache_add`** (*mm/swap.c*)  
Adds a page to the LRU `inactive_list`.

```
58 void lru_cache_add(struct page * page)
59 {
60     if (!PageLRU(page)) {
61         spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
62         if (!TestSetPageLRU(page))
63             add_page_to_inactive_list(page);
64         spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
65     }
66 }
```

60 If the page is not already part of the LRU lists, add it

61 Acquire the LRU lock

62-63 Test and set the LRU bit. If it was clear then call `add_page_to_inactive_list()`

64 Release the LRU lock



**Function: add\_page\_to\_active\_list** (*include/linux/swap.h*)

Adds the page to the `active_list`

```
179 #define add_page_to_active_list(page)      \
180 do {                                      \
181     DEBUG_LRU_PAGE(page);                \
182     SetPageActive(page);                 \
183     list_add(&(page)->lru, &active_list); \
184     nr_active_pages++;                    \
185 } while (0)
```

181 The `DEBUG_LRU_PAGE()` macro will call `BUG()` if the page is already on the LRU list or is marked been active

182 Update the flags of the page to show it is active

183 Add the page to the `active_list`

184 Update the count of the number of pages in the `active_list`

**Function: add\_page\_to\_inactive\_list** (*include/linux/swap.h*)

Adds the page to the `inactive_list`

```
187 #define add_page_to_inactive_list(page)    \
188 do {                                       \
189     DEBUG_LRU_PAGE(page);                \
190     list_add(&(page)->lru, &inactive_list); \
191     nr_inactive_pages++;                  \
192 } while (0)
```

189 The `DEBUG_LRU_PAGE()` macro will call `BUG()` if the page is already on the LRU list or is marked been active

190 Add the page to the `inactive_list`

191 Update the count of the number of inactive pages on the list

**Function: lru\_cache\_del** (*mm/swap.c*)

Acquire the lock protecting the LRU lists before calling `__lru_cache_del()`.

```
90 void lru_cache_del(struct page * page)
91 {
92     spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
93     __lru_cache_del(page);
94     spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
95 }
```

92 Acquire the LRU lock

93 `__lru_cache_del()` does the “real” work of removing the page from the LRU lists

94 Release the LRU lock

**Function: `__lru_cache_del`** (*mm/swap.c*)

Select which function is needed to remove the page from the LRU list.

```

75 void __lru_cache_del(struct page * page)
76 {
77     if (TestClearPageLRU(page)) {
78         if (PageActive(page)) {
79             del_page_from_active_list(page);
80         } else {
81             del_page_from_inactive_list(page);
82         }
83     }
84 }

```

77 Test and clear the flag indicating the page is in the LRU

78-82 If the page is on the LRU, select the appropriate removal function

78-79 If the page is active, then call `del_page_from_active_list()` else call `del_page_from_inactive_list()`

**Function: `del_page_from_active_list`** (*include/linux/swap.h*)

Remove the page from the `active_list`

```

194 #define del_page_from_active_list(page)      \
195 do {                                         \
196     list_del(&(page)->lru);                 \
197     ClearPageActive(page);                  \
198     nr_active_pages--;                       \
199 } while (0)

```

196 Delete the page from the list

197 Clear the flag indicating it is part of `active_list`. The flag indicating it is part of the LRU list has already been cleared by `__lru_cache_del()`

198 Update the count of the number of pages in the `active_list`

**Function: `del_page_from_inactive_list`** (*include/linux/swap.h*)

```

201 #define del_page_from_inactive_list(page)    \
202 do {                                         \
203     list_del(&(page)->lru);                 \
204     nr_inactive_pages--;                     \
205 } while (0)

```

203 Remove the page from the LRU list

204 Update the count of the number of pages in the `inactive_list`

**Function: mark\_page\_accessed** (*mm/filemap.c*)

This marks that a page has been referenced. If the page is already on the `active_list` or the referenced flag is clear, the referenced flag will be simply set. If it is in the `inactive_list` and the referenced flag has been set, `activate_page()` will be called to move the page to the top of the `active_list`.

```

1316 void mark_page_accessed(struct page *page)
1317 {
1318     if (!PageActive(page) && PageReferenced(page)) {
1319         activate_page(page);
1320         ClearPageReferenced(page);
1321     } else
1322         SetPageReferenced(page);
1323 }

```

1318-1321 If the page is on the `inactive_list` (`!PageActive`) and has been referenced recently (`PageReferenced`), `activate_page()` is called to move it to the `active_list`

1322 Otherwise, mark the page as been referenced

**Function: activate\_lock** (*mm/swap.c*)

Acquire the LRU lock before calling `activate_page_nolock()` which moves the page from the `inactive_list` to the `active_list`.

```

47 void activate_page(struct page * page)
48 {
49     spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
50     activate_page_nolock(page);
51     spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
52 }

```

49 Acquire the LRU lock

50 Call the main work function

51 Release the LRU lock

**Function: activate\_page\_nolock** (*mm/swap.c*)

Move the page from the `inactive_list` to the `active_list`

```

39 static inline void activate_page_nolock(struct page * page)
40 {
41     if (PageLRU(page) && !PageActive(page)) {
42         del_page_from_inactive_list(page);
43         add_page_to_active_list(page);
44     }
45 }

```

41 Make sure the page is on the LRU and not already on the `active_list`

42-43 Delete the page from the `inactive_list` and add to the `active_list`

**Function: `page_cache_get`** (*include/linux/pagemap.h*)

```
31 #define page_cache_get(x)      get_page(x)
```

31 Simple call `get_page()` which simply uses `atomic_inc()` to increment the page reference count

**Function: `page_cache_release`** (*include/linux/pagemap.h*)

```
32 #define page_cache_release(x)  __free_page(x)
```

32 Call `__free_page()` which decrements the page count. If the count reaches 0, the page will be freed

**Function: `add_to_page_cache`** (*mm/filemap.c*)

Acquire the lock protecting the page cache before calling `__add_to_page_cache()` which will add the page to the page hash table and inode queue which allows the pages belonging to files to be found quickly.

```
665 void add_to_page_cache(struct page * page,
                        struct address_space * mapping,
                        unsigned long offset)
666 {
667     spin_lock(&pagecache_lock);
668     __add_to_page_cache(page, mapping,
                        offset, page_hash(mapping, offset));
669     spin_unlock(&pagecache_lock);
670     lru_cache_add(page);
671 }
```

667 Acquire the lock protecting the page hash and inode queues

668 Call the function which performs the “real” work

669 Release the lock protecting the hash and inode queue

670 Add the page to the page cache

**Function:** `__add_to_page_cache` (*mm/filemap.c*)

Clear all page flags, lock it, take a reference and add it to the inode and hash queues.

```

651 static inline void __add_to_page_cache(struct page * page,
652         struct address_space *mapping, unsigned long offset,
653         struct page **hash)
654 {
655     unsigned long flags;
656
657     flags = page->flags & ~(1 << PG_uptodate |
                             1 << PG_error | 1 << PG_dirty |
                             1 << PG_referenced | 1 << PG_arch_1 |
                             1 << PG_checked);
658     page->flags = flags | (1 << PG_locked);
659     page_cache_get(page);
660     page->index = offset;
661     add_page_to_inode_queue(mapping, page);
662     add_page_to_hash_queue(page, hash);
663 }
```

657 Clear all page flags

658 Lock the page

659 Take a reference to the page in case it gets freed prematurely

660 Update the index so it is known what file offset this page represents

661 Add the page to the inode queue. This links the page via the `page→list` to the `clean_pages` list in the `address_space` and points the `page→mapping` to the same `address_space`

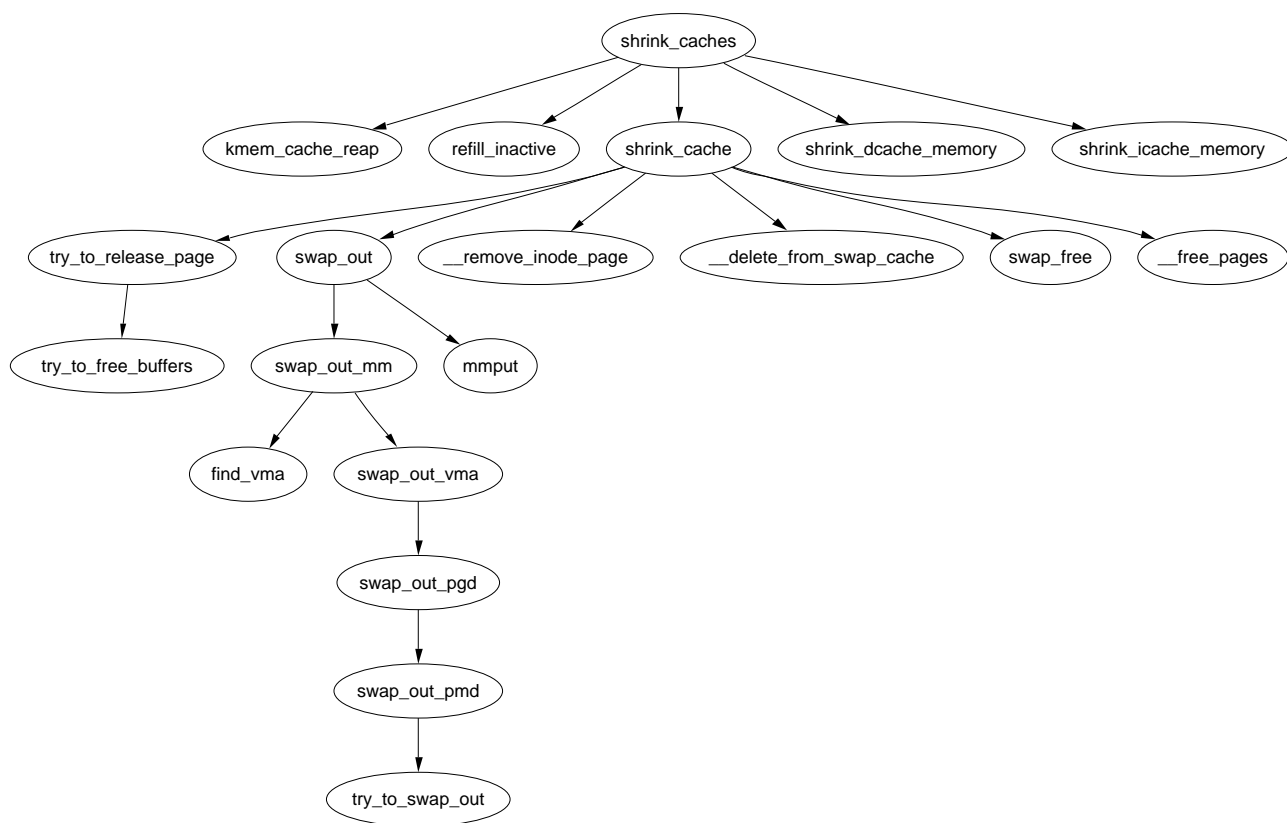
662 Add it to the page hash. Pages are hashed based on the `address_space` and the inode. It allows pages belonging to an `address_space` to be found without having to linearly search the inode queue

## 7.3 Shrinking all caches

**Function:** `shrink_caches` (*mm/vmscan.c*)

```

560 static int shrink_caches(zone_t * classzone, int priority,
                          unsigned int gfp_mask, int nr_pages)
561 {
562     int chunk_size = nr_pages;
563     unsigned long ratio;
```

Figure 7.1: `shrink_cache`

```

564
565     nr_pages -= kmem_cache_reap(gfp_mask);
566     if (nr_pages <= 0)
567         return 0;
568
569     nr_pages = chunk_size;
570     /* try to keep the active list 2/3 of the size of the cache */
571     ratio = (unsigned long) nr_pages *
572             nr_active_pages / ((nr_inactive_pages + 1) * 2);
573     refill_inactive(ratio);
574
575     nr_pages = shrink_cache(nr_pages, classzone, gfp_mask, priority);
576     if (nr_pages <= 0)
577         return 0;
578
579     shrink_dcache_memory(priority, gfp_mask);
580     shrink_icache_memory(priority, gfp_mask);
581 #ifdef CONFIG_QUOTA
582     shrink_dqcache_memory(DEF_PRIORITY, gfp_mask);
583 #endif
584     return nr_pages;
585 }

```

560 The parameters are as follows;

- `classzone` is the zone that pages should be freed from
- `priority` determines how much work will be done to free pages
- `gfp_mask` determines what sort of actions may be taken
- `nr_pages` is the number of pages remaining to be freed

565-567 Ask the slab allocator to free up some pages. If enough are freed, the function returns otherwise `nr_pages` will be freed from other caches

571-572 Move pages from the `active_list` to the `inactive_list` with `refill_inactive()`. The number of pages moved depends on how many pages need to be freed and to have `active_list` about two thirds the size of the page cache

574-575 Shrink the page cache, if enough pages are freed, return

578-582 Shrink the dcache, icache and dqcache. These are small objects in themselves but the cascading effect frees up a lot of disk buffers

584 Return the number of pages remaining to be freed

**Function: try\_to\_free\_pages** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

This function cycles through all pgdats and zones and tries to balance all of them. It is only called by the buffer manager when it fails to create new buffers or grow existing ones.

```

607 int try_to_free_pages(unsigned int gfp_mask)
608 {
609     pg_data_t *pgdat;
610     zonelist_t *zonelist;
611     unsigned long pf_free_pages;
612     int error = 0;
613
614     pf_free_pages = current->flags & PF_FREE_PAGES;
615     current->flags &= ~PF_FREE_PAGES;
616
617     for_each_pgdat(pgdat) {
618         zonelist = pgdat->node_zonelists +
619                 (gfp_mask & GFP_ZONEMASK);
620         error |= try_to_free_pages_zone(
621                 zonelist->zones[0], gfp_mask);
622     }
623     current->flags |= pf_free_pages;
624     return error;
625 }
```

614-615 This clears the PF\_FREE\_PAGES flag if it is set so that pages freed by the process will be returned to the global pool rather than reserved for the process itself

617-620 Cycle through all nodes and zones and call try\_to\_free\_pages() for each

622-623 Restore the process flags and return the result

**Function: try\_to\_free\_pages\_zone** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Try to free SWAP\_CLUSTER\_MAX pages from the supplied zone.

```

587 int try_to_free_pages_zone(zone_t *classzone, unsigned int gfp_mask)
588 {
589     int priority = DEF_PRIORITY;
590     int nr_pages = SWAP_CLUSTER_MAX;
591
592     gfp_mask = pf_gfp_mask(gfp_mask);
593     do {
594         nr_pages = shrink_caches(classzone, priority,
```



```

                                                                    gfp_mask, nr_pages);
595         if (nr_pages <= 0)
596             return 1;
597     } while (--priority);
598
599     /*
600     * Hmm.. Cache shrink failed - time to kill something?
601     * Mhwahahaha! This is the part I really like. Giggle.
602     */
603     out_of_memory();
604     return 0;
605 }

```

589 Start with the lowest priority. Statically defined to be 6

590 Try and free `SWAP_CLUSTER_MAX` pages. Statically defined to be 32

592 `pf_gfp_mask()` checks the `PF_NOIO` flag in the current process flags. If no IO can be performed, it ensures there is no incompatible flags in the GFP mask

593-597 Starting with the lowest priority and increasing with each pass, call `shrink_caches()` until `nr_pages` has been freed

595-596 If enough pages were freed, return indicating that the work is complete

603 If enough pages could not be freed even at highest priority (where at worst the full `inactive_list` is scanned) then check to see if we are out of memory. If we are, then a process will be selected to be killed

604 Return indicating that we failed to free enough pages

## 7.4 Refilling `inactive_list`

**Function:** `refill_inactive` (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Move `nr_pages` from the `active_list` to the `inactive_list`

```

533 static void refill_inactive(int nr_pages)
534 {
535     struct list_head * entry;
536
537     spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
538     entry = active_list.prev;
539     while (nr_pages && entry != &active_list) {
540         struct page * page;
541

```

```

542         page = list_entry(entry, struct page, lru);
543         entry = entry->prev;
544         if (PageTestandClearReferenced(page)) {
545             list_del(&page->lru);
546             list_add(&page->lru, &active_list);
547             continue;
548         }
549
550         nr_pages--;
551
552         del_page_from_active_list(page);
553         add_page_to_inactive_list(page);
554         SetPageReferenced(page);
555     }
556     spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
557 }

```

537 Acquire the lock protecting the LRU list

538 Take the last entry in the `active_list`

539-555 Move `nr_pages` or until the `active_list` is empty

542 Get the struct `page` for this entry

544-548 Test and clear the referenced flag. If it has been referenced, then it is moved back to the top of the `active_list`

550-553 Move one page from the `active_list` to the `inactive_list`

554 Mark it referenced so that if it is referenced again soon, it will be promoted back to the `active_list` without requiring a second reference

556 Release the lock protecting the LRU list

## 7.5 Reclaiming pages from the page cache

**Function:** `shrink_cache` (*mm/vmscan.c*)

```

338 static int shrink_cache(int nr_pages, zone_t * classzone,
                          unsigned int gfp_mask, int priority)
339 {
340     struct list_head * entry;
341     int max_scan = nr_inactive_pages / priority;
342     int max_mapped = min((nr_pages << (10 - priority)),
                          max_scan / 10);
343

```

```

344     spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
345     while (--max_scan >= 0 &&
           (entry = inactive_list.prev) != &inactive_list) {

```

338 The parameters are as follows;

`nr_pages` The number of pages to swap out

`classzone` The zone we are interested in swapping pages out for. Pages not belonging to this zone are skipped

`gfp_mask` The gfp mask determining what actions may be taken

`priority` The priority of the function, starts at DEF\_PRIORITY (6) and decreases to the highest priority of 1

341 The maximum number of pages to scan is the number of pages in the `active_list` divided by the priority. At lowest priority, 1/6th of the list may scanned. At highest priority, the full list may be scanned

342 The maximum amount of process mapped pages allowed is either one tenth of the `max_scan` value or  $nr\_pages * 2^{10-priority}$ . If this number of pages are found, whole processes will be swapped out

344 Lock the LRU list

345 Keep scanning until `max_scan` pages have been scanned or the `inactive_list` is empty

```

346         struct page * page;
347
348         if (unlikely(current->need_resched)) {
349             spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
350             __set_current_state(TASK_RUNNING);
351             schedule();
352             spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
353             continue;
354         }
355

```

348-354 Reschedule if the quanta has been used up

349 Free the LRU lock as we are about to sleep

350 Show we are still running

351 Call `schedule()` so another process can be context switched in

352 Re-acquire the LRU lock

353 Move to the next page, this has the curious side effect of skipping over one page. It is unclear why this happens and is possibly a bug

```

356         page = list_entry(entry, struct page, lru);
357
358         BUG_ON(!PageLRU(page));
359         BUG_ON(PageActive(page));
360
361         list_del(entry);
362         list_add(entry, &inactive_list);
363
364         /*
365          * Zero page counts can happen because we unlink the pages
366          * _after_ decrementing the usage count..
367          */
368         if (unlikely(!page_count(page)))
369             continue;
370
371         if (!memclass(page_zone(page), classzone))
372             continue;
373
374         /* Racy check to avoid trylocking when not worthwhile */
375         if (!page->buffers &&
376             (page_count(page) != 1 || !page->mapping))
377             goto page_mapped;
378
379     }
380 }

```

356 Get the struct page for this entry in the LRU

358-359 It is a bug if the page either belongs to the `active_list` or is currently marked as active

361-362 Move the page to the top of the `inactive_list` so that if the page is skipped, it will not be simply examined a second time

368-369 If the page count has already reached 0, skip over it. This is possible if another process has just unlinked the page and is waiting for something like IO to complete before removing it from the LRU

371-372 Skip over this page if it belongs to a zone we are not currently interested in

375-376 If the page is mapped by a process, then goto `page_mapped` where the `max_mapped` is decremented and next page examined. If `max_mapped` reaches 0, process pages will be swapped out

```

382         if (unlikely(TryLockPage(page))) {
383             if (PageLauder(page) && (gfp_mask & __GFP_FS)) {
384                 page_cache_get(page);
385                 spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
386                 wait_on_page(page);
387                 page_cache_release(page);
388                 spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
389             }
390             continue;
391         }

```

Page is locked and the launder bit is set. In this case, wait until the IO is complete and then try to free the page

382-383 If we could not lock the page, the PG\_lauder bit is set and the GFP flags allow the caller to perform FS operations, then...

384 Take a reference to the page so it does not disappear while we sleep

385 Free the LRU lock

386 Wait until the IO is complete

387 Release the reference to the page. If it reaches 0, the page will be freed

388 Re-acquire the LRU lock

390 Move to the next page

```

392
393         if (PageDirty(page) &&
402             is_page_cache_freeable(page) && page->mapping) {
403             int (*writepage)(struct page *);
404             writepage = page->mapping->a_ops->writepage;
405             if ((gfp_mask & __GFP_FS) && writepage) {
406                 ClearPageDirty(page);
407                 SetPageLauder(page);
408                 page_cache_get(page);
409                 spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
410
411                 writepage(page);
412                 page_cache_release(page);
413
414                 spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
415                 continue;
416             }
417         }

```

This handles the case where a page is dirty, is not mapped by any process has no buffers and is backed by a file or device mapping. The page is cleaned and will be removed by the previous block of code during the next pass through the list.

```

393 PageDirty checks the PG_dirty bit, is_page_cache_freeable() will return
    true if it is not mapped by any process and has no buffers

404 Get a pointer to the necessary writepage() function for this mapping or device

405-416 This block of code can only be executed if a writepage() function is
    available and the GFP flags allow file operations

406-407 Clear the dirty bit and mark that the page is being laundered

408 Take a reference to the page so it will not be freed unexpectedly

409 Unlock the LRU list

411 Call the writepage function

412 Release the reference to the page

414-415 Re-acquire the LRU list lock and move to the next page

424         if (page->buffers) {
425             spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
426
427             /* avoid to free a locked page */
428             page_cache_get(page);
429
430             if (try_to_release_page(page, gfp_mask)) {
431                 if (!page->mapping) {
432                     spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
433                     UnlockPage(page);
434                     __lru_cache_del(page);
435
436                     page_cache_release(page);
437
438                     if (--nr_pages)
439                         continue;
440                     break;
441                 } else {
442                     page_cache_release(page);
443
444                     spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
445                 }
446             } else {
447                 UnlockPage(page);
448             }
449         }
450     }
451 }

```

```

461         page_cache_release(page);
462
463         spin_lock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
464         continue;
465     }
466 }
```

Page has buffers associated with it that must be freed.

425 Release the LRU lock as we may sleep

428 Take a reference to the page

430 Call `try_to_release_page()` which will attempt to release the buffers associated with the page. Returns 1 if it succeeds

431-447 Handle where the release of buffers succeeded

431-448 If the mapping is not filled, it is an anonymous page which must be removed from the page cache

438-440 Take the LRU list lock, unlock the page, delete it from the page cache and free it

445-446 Update `nr_pages` to show a page has been freed and move to the next page

447 If `nr_pages` drops to 0, then exit the loop as the work is completed

449-456 If the page does have an associated mapping then simply drop the reference to the page and re-acquire the LRU lock

459-464 If the buffers could not be freed, then unlock the page, drop the reference to it, re-acquire the LRU lock and move to the next page

```

467
468         spin_lock(&pagecache_lock);
469
473         if (!page->mapping || !is_page_cache_freeable(page)) {
474             spin_unlock(&pagecache_lock);
475             UnlockPage(page);
476 page_mapped:
477             if (--max_mapped >= 0)
478                 continue;
479
484             spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
485             swap_out(priority, gfp_mask, classzone);
486             return nr_pages;
487 }
```

468 From this point on, pages in the swap cache are likely to be examined which is protected by the `pagecache_lock` which must be now held

473-487 An anonymous page with no buffers is mapped by a process

474-475 Release the page cache lock and the page

477-478 Decrement `max_mapped`. If it has not reached 0, move to the next page

484-485 Too many mapped pages have been found in the page cache. The LRU lock is released and `swap_out()` is called to begin swapping out whole processes

```

493             if (PageDirty(page)) {
494                 spin_unlock(&pagecache_lock);
495                 UnlockPage(page);
496                 continue;
497             }

```

493-497 The page has no references but could have been dirtied by the last process to free it if the dirty bit was set in the PTE. It is left in the page cache and will get laundered later. Once it has been cleaned, it can be safely deleted

```

498
499             /* point of no return */
500             if (likely(!PageSwapCache(page))) {
501                 __remove_inode_page(page);
502                 spin_unlock(&pagecache_lock);
503             } else {
504                 swp_entry_t swap;
505                 swap.val = page->index;
506                 __delete_from_swap_cache(page);
507                 spin_unlock(&pagecache_lock);
508                 swap_free(swap);
509             }
510
511             __lru_cache_del(page);
512             UnlockPage(page);
513
514             /* effectively free the page here */
515             page_cache_release(page);
516
517             if (--nr_pages)
518                 continue;
519             break;
520         }

```

500-503 If the page does not belong to the swap cache, it is part of the inode queue so it is removed



504-508 Remove it from the swap cache as there is no more references to it

511 Delete it from the page cache

512 Unlock the page

515 Free the page

517-518 Decrement the `nr_page` and move to the next page if it is not 0

519 If it reaches 0, the work of the function is complete

```

521         spin_unlock(&pagemap_lru_lock);
522
523         return nr_pages;
524 }

```

521-524 Function exit. Free the LRU lock and return the number of pages left to free

## 7.6 Swapping Out Process Pages

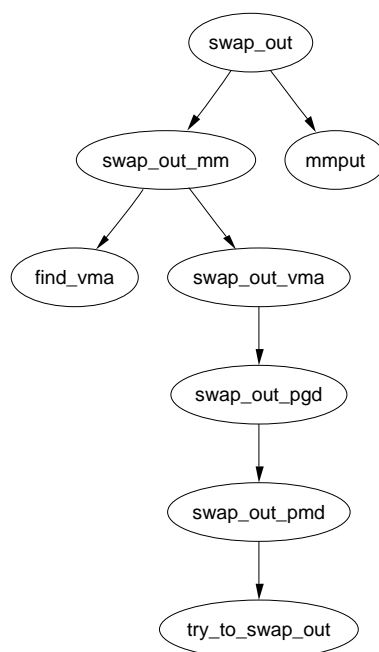


Figure 7.2: Call Graph: `swap_out`

**Function: swap\_out** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

This function linearly searches through every processes page tables trying to swap out SWAP\_CLUSTER\_MAX number of pages. The process it starts with is the swap\_mm and the starting address is mm→swap\_address

```

296 static int swap_out(unsigned int priority, unsigned int gfp_mask,
                       zone_t * classzone)
297 {
298     int counter, nr_pages = SWAP_CLUSTER_MAX;
299     struct mm_struct *mm;
300
301     counter = mmlist_nr;
302     do {
303         if (unlikely(current->need_resched)) {
304             __set_current_state(TASK_RUNNING);
305             schedule();
306         }
307
308         spin_lock(&mmlist_lock);
309         mm = swap_mm;
310         while (mm->swap_address == TASK_SIZE || mm == &init_mm) {
311             mm->swap_address = 0;
312             mm = list_entry(mm->mmlist.next,
                             struct mm_struct, mmlist);
313             if (mm == swap_mm)
314                 goto empty;
315             swap_mm = mm;
316         }
317
318         /* Make sure the mm doesn't disappear
319            when we drop the lock.. */
319         atomic_inc(&mm->mm_users);
320         spin_unlock(&mmlist_lock);
321
322         nr_pages = swap_out_mm(mm, nr_pages, &counter, classzone);
323
324         mmput(mm);
325
326         if (!nr_pages)
327             return 1;
328     } while (--counter >= 0);
329
330     return 0;
331
332 empty:

```

```

333     spin_unlock(&mmlist_lock);
334     return 0;
335 }

```

301 Set the counter so the process list is only scanned once

303-306 Reschedule if the quanta has been used up to prevent CPU hogging

308 Acquire the lock protecting the mm list

309 Start with the `swap_mm`. It is interesting this is never checked to make sure it is valid. It is possible, albeit unlikely that the mm has been freed since the last scan *and* the slab holding the `mm_struct` released making the pointer totally invalid. The lack of bug reports might be because the slab never managed to get freed up and would be difficult to trigger

310-316 Move to the next process if the `swap_address` has reached the `TASK_SIZE` or if the mm is the `init_mm`

311 Start at the beginning of the process space

312 Get the mm for this process

313-314 If it is the same, there is no running processes that can be examined

315 Record the `swap_mm` for the next pass

319 Increase the reference count so that the mm does not get freed while we are scanning

320 Release the mm lock

322 Begin scanning the mm with `swap_out_mm()`

324 Drop the reference to the mm

326-327 If the required number of pages has been freed, return success

328 If we failed on this pass, increase the priority so more processes will be scanned

330 Return failure

**Function: `swap_out_mm`** (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Walk through each VMA and call `swap_out_mm()` for each one.

```

256 static inline int swap_out_mm(struct mm_struct * mm, int count,
                               int * mmcounter, zone_t * classzone)
257 {
258     unsigned long address;
259     struct vm_area_struct* vma;

```

```

260
265     spin_lock(&mm->page_table_lock);
266     address = mm->swap_address;
267     if (address == TASK_SIZE || swap_mm != mm) {
268         /* We raced: don't count this mm but try again */
269         ++*mmcounter;
270         goto out_unlock;
271     }
272     vma = find_vma(mm, address);
273     if (vma) {
274         if (address < vma->vm_start)
275             address = vma->vm_start;
276
277         for (;;) {
278             count = swap_out_vma(mm, vma, address,
279                                 count, classzone);
280             vma = vma->vm_next;
281             if (!vma)
282                 break;
283             if (!count)
284                 goto out_unlock;
285             address = vma->vm_start;
286         }
287     }
288     /* Indicate that we reached the end of address space */
289     mm->swap_address = TASK_SIZE;
290 out_unlock:
291     spin_unlock(&mm->page_table_lock);
292     return count;
293 }

```

265 Acquire the page table lock for this mm

266 Start with the address contained in swap\_address

267-271 If the address is TASK\_SIZE, it means that a thread raced and scanned this process already. Increase mmcounter so that swap\_out\_mm() knows to go to another process

272 Find the VMA for this address

273 Presuming a VMA was found then ....

274-275 Start at the beginning of the VMA

277-285 Scan through this and each subsequent VMA calling `swap_out_vma()` for each one. If the requisite number of pages (`count`) is freed, then finish scanning and return

288 Once the last VMA has been scanned, set `swap_address` to `TASK_SIZE` so that this process will be skipped over by `swap_out_mm()` next time

**Function:** `swap_out_vma` (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Walk through this VMA and for each PGD in it, call `swap_out_pgd()`.

```

227 static inline int swap_out_vma(struct mm_struct * mm,
                                struct vm_area_struct * vma,
                                unsigned long address, int count,
                                zone_t * classzone)
228 {
229     pgd_t *pgdir;
230     unsigned long end;
231
232     /* Don't swap out areas which are reserved */
233     if (vma->vm_flags & VM_RESERVED)
234         return count;
235
236     pgdir = pgd_offset(mm, address);
237
238     end = vma->vm_end;
239     BUG_ON(address >= end);
240     do {
241         count = swap_out_pgd(mm, vma, pgdir,
                                address, end, count, classzone);
242         if (!count)
243             break;
244         address = (address + PGDIR_SIZE) & PGDIR_MASK;
245         pgdir++;
246     } while (address && (address < end));
247     return count;
248 }

```

233-234 Skip over this VMA if the `VM_RESERVED` flag is set. This is used by some device drivers such as the SCSI generic driver

236 Get the starting PGD for the address

238 Mark where the end is and BUG it if the starting address is somehow past the end

240 Cycle through PGD's until the end address is reached

241 Call `swap_out_pgd()` keeping count of how many more pages need to be freed

242-243 If enough pages have been freed, break and return

244-245 Move to the next PGD and move the address to the next PGD aligned address

247 Return the remaining number of pages to be freed

**Function:** `swap_out_pgd` (*mm/vmscan.c*)

Step through all PMD's in the supplied PGD and call `swap_out_pmd()`

```

197 static inline int swap_out_pgd(struct mm_struct * mm,
                                struct vm_area_struct * vma, pgd_t *dir,
                                unsigned long address, unsigned long end,
                                int count, zone_t * classzone)
198 {
199     pmd_t * pmd;
200     unsigned long pgd_end;
201
202     if (pgd_none(*dir))
203         return count;
204     if (pgd_bad(*dir)) {
205         pgd_ERROR(*dir);
206         pgd_clear(dir);
207         return count;
208     }
209
210     pmd = pmd_offset(dir, address);
211
212     pgd_end = (address + PGDIR_SIZE) & PGDIR_MASK;
213     if (pgd_end && (end > pgd_end))
214         end = pgd_end;
215
216     do {
217         count = swap_out_pmd(mm, vma, pmd, address, end, count,
classzone);
218         if (!count)
219             break;
220         address = (address + PMD_SIZE) & PMD_MASK;
221         pmd++;
222     } while (address && (address < end));
223     return count;
224 }

```

202-203 If there is no PGD, return



```

                                                                    page, classzone);
183                                     if (!count) {
184                                         address += PAGE_SIZE;
185                                         break;
186                                     }
187                                 }
188                             }
189                             address += PAGE_SIZE;
190                             pte++;
191     } while (address && (address < end));
192     mm->swap_address = address;
193     return count;
194 }

```

163-164 Return if there is no PMD

165-169 If the PMD is bad, flag it as such and return

171 Get the starting PTE

173-175 Calculate the end to be the end of the PMD or the end of the VMA, whichever is closer

177-191 Cycle through each PTE

178 Make sure the PTE is marked present

179 Get the struct page for this PTE

181 If it is a valid page and it is not reserved then ...

182 Call `try_to_swap_out()`

183-186 If enough pages have been swapped out, move the address to the next page and break to return

189-190 Move to the next page and PTE

192 Update the `swap_address` to show where we last finished off

193 Return the number of pages remaining to be freed

**Function:** `try_to_swap_out` (*mm/vmscan.c*)

This function tries to swap out a page from a process. It is quite a large function so will be dealt with in parts. Broadly speaking they are

- Function preamble, ensure this is a page that should be swapped out
- Remove the page and PTE from the page tables



- Handle the case where the page is already in the swap cache
- Handle the case where the page is dirty or has associated buffers
- Handle the case where the page is been added to the swap cache

```

47 static inline int try_to_swap_out(struct mm_struct * mm,
                                   struct vm_area_struct* vma,
                                   unsigned long address,
                                   pte_t * page_table,
                                   struct page *page,
                                   zone_t * classzone)
48 {
49     pte_t pte;
50     swp_entry_t entry;
51
52     /* Don't look at this pte if it's been accessed recently. */
53     if ((vma->vm_flags & VM_LOCKED) ||
54         ptep_test_and_clear_young(page_table)) {
55         mark_page_accessed(page);
56         return 0;
57     }
58     /* Don't bother unmapping pages that are active */
59     if (PageActive(page))
60         return 0;
61
62     /* Don't bother replenishing zones not under pressure.. */
63     if (!memclass(page_zone(page), classzone))
64         return 0;
65
66     if (TryLockPage(page))
67         return 0;
68
69     /* Don't swap out pages that are already in the swap cache */
70     if (swp_entry_in_cache(entry, classzone))
71         return 0;
72
73     /* Don't swap out pages that are dirty or have associated buffers */
74     flush_cache_page(vma, address);
75     pte = ptep_get_and_clear(page_table);

```

53-56 If the page is locked (for tasks like IO) or the PTE shows the page has been accessed recently then clear the referenced bit and call `mark_page_accessed()` to make the struct page reflect the age. Return 0 to show it was not swapped out

59-60 If the page is on the `active_list`, do not swap it out

63-64 If the page belongs to a zone we are not interested in, do not swap it out

66-67 If the page could not be locked, do not swap it out

```

76         flush_tlb_page(vma, address);
77
78         if (pte_dirty(pte))
79             set_page_dirty(page);
80

```

74 Call the architecture hook to flush this page from all CPU's

75 Get the PTE from the page tables and clear it

76 Call the architecture hook to flush the TLB

78-79 If the PTE was marked dirty, mark the struct page dirty so it will be laundered correctly

```

86         if (PageSwapCache(page)) {
87             entry.val = page->index;
88             swap_duplicate(entry);
89 set_swap_pte:
90             set_pte(page_table, swp_entry_to_pte(entry));
91 drop_pte:
92             mm->rss--;
93             UnlockPage(page);
94             {
95                 int freeable =
96                     page_count(page) - !!page->buffers <= 2;
97                 page_cache_release(page);
98                 return freeable;
99             }

```

Handle the case where the page is already in the swap cache

87-88 Fill in the index value for the swap entry. `swap_duplicate()` verifies the swap identifier is valid and increases the counter in the `swap_map` if it is

90 Fill the PTE with information needed to get the page from swap

92 Update RSS to show there is one less page

93 Unlock the page

95 The page is free-able if the count is currently 2 or less and has no buffers

96 Decrement the reference count and free the page if it reaches 0

97 Return if the page was freed or not

```

115         if (page->mapping)
116             goto drop_pte;
117         if (!PageDirty(page))
118             goto drop_pte;
124         if (page->buffers)
125             goto preserve;

```

115-116 If the page has an associated mapping, simply drop it and it will be caught during another scan of the page cache later

117-118 If the page is clean, it is safe to simply drop it

124-125 If it has associated buffers due to a truncate followed by a page fault, then re-attach the page and PTE to the page tables as it can't be handled yet

```

126
127         /*
128          * This is a dirty, swappable page. First of all,
129          * get a suitable swap entry for it, and make sure
130          * we have the swap cache set up to associate the
131          * page with that swap entry.
132          */
133         for (;;) {
134             entry = get_swap_page();
135             if (!entry.val)
136                 break;
137             /* Add it to the swap cache and mark it dirty
138              * (adding to the page cache will clear the dirty
139              * and uptodate bits, so we need to do it again)
140              */
141             if (add_to_swap_cache(page, entry) == 0) {
142                 SetPageUptodate(page);
143                 set_page_dirty(page);
144                 goto set_swap_pte;
145             }
146             /* Raced with "speculative" read_swap_cache_async */
147             swap_free(entry);
148         }
149
150         /* No swap space left */
151     preserve:
152         set_pte(page_table, pte);
153         UnlockPage(page);
154         return 0;
155     }

```

- 134 Allocate a swap entry for this page
- 135-136 If one could not be allocated, break out where the PTE and page will be re-attached to the process page tables
- 141 Add the page to the swap cache
- 142 Mark the page as up to date in memory
- 143 Mark the page dirty so that it will be written out to swap soon
- 144 Goto `set_swap_pte` which will update the PTE with information needed to get the page from swap later
- 147 If the add to swap cache failed, it means that the page was placed in the swap cache already by a readahead so drop the work done here
- 152 Reattach the PTE to the page tables
- 153 Unlock the page
- 154 Return that no page was freed

# Chapter 8

## Swap Management

### 8.1 Describing the Swap Area

### 8.2 Scanning for free entries

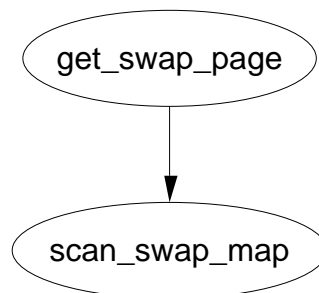


Figure 8.1: Call Graph: `get_swap_page`

**Function:** `get_swap_page` (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This is the high level API function for getting a slot in swap space.

```
99 swp_entry_t get_swap_page(void)
100 {
101     struct swap_info_struct * p;
102     unsigned long offset;
103     swp_entry_t entry;
104     int type, wrapped = 0;
105
106     entry.val = 0; /* Out of memory */
107     swap_list_lock();
108     type = swap_list.next;
109     if (type < 0)
110         goto out;
```

```

111         if (nr_swap_pages <= 0)
112             goto out;
113
114         while (1) {
115             p = &swap_info[type];
116             if ((p->flags & SWP_WRITEOK) == SWP_WRITEOK) {
117                 swap_device_lock(p);
118                 offset = scan_swap_map(p);
119                 swap_device_unlock(p);
120                 if (offset) {
121                     entry = SWP_ENTRY(type,offset);
122                     type = swap_info[type].next;
123                     if (type < 0 ||
124                         p->prio != swap_info[type].prio) {
125                         swap_list.next = swap_list.head;
126                     } else {
127                         swap_list.next = type;
128                     }
129                     goto out;
130                 }
131             }
132             type = p->next;
133             if (!wrapped) {
134                 if (type < 0 || p->prio != swap_info[type].prio) {
135                     type = swap_list.head;
136                     wrapped = 1;
137                 }
138             } else
139                 if (type < 0)
140                     goto out;          /* out of swap space */
141         }
142 out:
143     swap_list_unlock();
144     return entry;
145 }

```

107 Lock the list of swap pages

108 Get the next swap area that is to be used for allocating from

109-110 If there is no swap areas, return NULL

111-112 If the accounting says there is no swap pages, return NULL

114-141 Cycle through all swap areas

115 Get the swap info struct

116 If this swap area is available for writing to and is active...

117 Lock the swap area

118 Call `scan_swap_map()` which searches for a free slot

119 Unlock the swap device

120-130 If a slot was free...

121 Encode an identifier for the entry with `SWP_ENTRY()`

122 Record the next swap area to use

123-126 If the next area is the end of the list or the priority of the next swap area does not match the current one, move back to the head

126-128 Otherwise move to the next area

129 Goto out

132 Move to the next swap area

133-138 Check for wraparound. Set `wrapped` to 1 if we get to the end of the list of swap areas

139-140 If there was no available swap areas, goto out

142 The exit to this function

143 Unlock the swap area list

144 Return the entry if one was found and NULL otherwise

**Function: `scan_swap_map`** (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This function tries to allocate `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER` number of pages sequentially in swap. When it has allocated that many, it searches for another block of free slots of size `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER`. If it fails to find one, it resorts to allocating the first free slot.

```

36 static inline int scan_swap_map(struct swap_info_struct *si)
37 {
38     unsigned long offset;
47     if (si->cluster_nr) {
48         while (si->cluster_next <= si->highest_bit) {
49             offset = si->cluster_next++;
50             if (si->swap_map[offset])
51                 continue;
52             si->cluster_nr--;
53             goto got_page;
54         }
55     }

```

Allocate `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER` pages sequentially. `cluster_nr` is initialised to `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER` and decrements with each allocation

47 If `cluster_nr` is still positive, allocate the next available sequential slot

48 While the current offset to use (`cluster_next`) is less than the highest known free slot (`highest_bit`) then ...

49 Record the offset and update `cluster_next` to the next free slot

50-51 If the slot is not actually free, move to the next one

52 Slot has been found, decrement the `cluster_nr` field

53 Goto the out path

```

56     si->cluster_nr = SWAPFILE_CLUSTER;
57
58     /* try to find an empty (even not aligned) cluster. */
59     offset = si->lowest_bit;
60 check_next_cluster:
61     if (offset+SWAPFILE_CLUSTER-1 <= si->highest_bit)
62     {
63         int nr;
64         for (nr = offset; nr < offset+SWAPFILE_CLUSTER; nr++)
65             if (si->swap_map[nr])
66             {
67                 offset = nr+1;
68                 goto check_next_cluster;
69             }
70         /* We found a completely empty cluster, so start
71          * using it.
72          */
73         goto got_page;
74     }

```

At this stage, `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER` pages have been allocated sequentially so find the next free block of `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER` pages.

56 Re-initialise the count of sequential pages to allocate to `SWAPFILE_CLUSTER`

59 Starting searching at the lowest known free slot

61 If the offset plus the cluster size is less than the known last free slot, then examine all the pages to see if this is a large free block

64 Scan from `offset` to `offset + SWAPFILE_CLUSTER`



65-69 If this slot is used, then start searching again for a free slot beginning after this known allocated one

73 A large cluster was found so use it

```

75         /* No luck, so now go finegrained as usual. -Andrea */
76         for (offset = si->lowest_bit; offset <= si->highest_bit ;
                                                    offset++) {
77             if (si->swap_map[offset])
78                 continue;
79             si->lowest_bit = offset+1;

```

This unusual for loop extract starts scanning for a free page starting from `lowest_bit`

77-78 If the slot is in use, move to the next one

79 Update the `lowest_bit` known probable free slot to the succeeding one

```

80         got_page:
81             if (offset == si->lowest_bit)
82                 si->lowest_bit++;
83             if (offset == si->highest_bit)
84                 si->highest_bit--;
85             if (si->lowest_bit > si->highest_bit) {
86                 si->lowest_bit = si->max;
87                 si->highest_bit = 0;
88             }
89             si->swap_map[offset] = 1;
90             nr_swap_pages--;
91             si->cluster_next = offset+1;
92             return offset;
93     }
94     si->lowest_bit = si->max;
95     si->highest_bit = 0;
96     return 0;
97 }

```

A slot has been found, do some housekeeping and return it

81-82 If this offset is the known lowest free slot(`lowest_bit`), increment it

83-84 If this offset is the highest known likely free slot, decrement it

85-88 If the low and high mark meet, the swap area is not worth searching any more so set the low slot to be the highest possible slot and the high mark to 0 to cut down on search time later. This will be fixed up by the next free

- 89 Set the reference count for the slot
- 90 Update the accounting for the number of available swap pages (`nr_swap_pages`)
- 91 Set `cluster_next` to the adjacent slot so the next search will start here
- 92 Return the free slot
- 94-96 No free slot available, mark the area unsearchable and return 0

## 8.3 Swap Cache

**Function:** `add_to_swap_cache` (*mm/swap\_state.c*)

This function wraps around the normal page cache handler. It first checks if the page is already in the swap cache with `swap_duplicate()` and if it does not, it calls `add_to_page_cache_unique()` instead.

```

70 int add_to_swap_cache(struct page *page, swp_entry_t entry)
71 {
72     if (page->mapping)
73         BUG();
74     if (!swap_duplicate(entry)) {
75         INC_CACHE_INFO(noent_race);
76         return -ENOENT;
77     }
78     if (add_to_page_cache_unique(page, &swapper_space, entry.val,
79         page_hash(&swapper_space, entry.val)) != 0) {
80         swap_free(entry);
81         INC_CACHE_INFO(exist_race);
82         return -EEXIST;
83     }
84     if (!PageLocked(page))
85         BUG();
86     if (!PageSwapCache(page))
87         BUG();
88     INC_CACHE_INFO(add_total);
89     return 0;
90 }
```

72-73 A check is made with `PageSwapCache()` before this function is called which ensures the page has no existing mapping. If code is calling this function directly, it should have ensured no existing mapping existed

74-77 Try an increment the count for this entry with `swap_duplicate()`. If a slot already exists in the `swap_map`, increment the statistic recording the number of races involving adding pages to the swap cache and return `ENOENT`

- 78 Try and add the page to the page cache with `add_to_page_cache_unique()`. This function is similar to `add_to_page_cache()` except it searches the page cache for a duplicate entry with `__find_page_nolock()`. The managing address space is `swapper_space`. The “offset within the file” in this case is the offset within `swap_map`, hence `entry.val` and finally the page is hashed based on `address_space` and offset within `swap_map`
- 80-83 If it already existed in the page cache, we raced so increment the statistic recording the number of races to insert an existing page into the swap cache and return `EEXIST`
- 84-85 If the page is locked for IO, it is a bug
- 86-87 If it is not now in the swap cache, something went seriously wrong
- 88 Increment the statistic recording the total number of pages in the swap cache
- 89 Return success

**Function: `swap_duplicate`** (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This function verifies a swap entry is valid and if so, increments its swap map count.

```

1143 int swap_duplicate(swp_entry_t entry)
1144 {
1145     struct swap_info_struct * p;
1146     unsigned long offset, type;
1147     int result = 0;
1148
1149     type = SWP_TYPE(entry);
1150     if (type >= nr_swapfiles)
1151         goto bad_file;
1152     p = type + swap_info;
1153     offset = SWP_OFFSET(entry);
1154
1155     swap_device_lock(p);
1156     if (offset < p->max && p->swap_map[offset]) {
1157         if (p->swap_map[offset] < SWAP_MAP_MAX - 1) {
1158             p->swap_map[offset]++;
1159             result = 1;
1160         } else if (p->swap_map[offset] <= SWAP_MAP_MAX) {
1161             if (swap_overflow++ < 5)
1162                 printk(KERN_WARNING "swap_dup: swap entry
                                     overflow\n");
1163             p->swap_map[offset] = SWAP_MAP_MAX;
1164             result = 1;
1165         }

```

```

1166     }
1167     swap_device_unlock(p);
1168 out:
1169     return result;
1170
1171 bad_file:
1172     printk(KERN_ERR "swap_dup: %s%08lx\n", Bad_file, entry.val);
1173     goto out;
1174 }

```

1143 The parameter is the swap entry to increase the `swap_map` count for

1149-1151 Get the offset within the `swap_info` for the `swap_info_struct` containing this entry. If it is greater than the number of swap areas, goto `bad_file`

1152-1153 Get the relevant `swap_info_struct` and get the offset within its `swap_map`

1155 Lock the swap device

1156 Make a quick sanity check to ensure the offset is within the `swap_map` and that the slot indicated has a positive count. A 0 count would mean the slot is not free and this is a bogus `swp_entry_t`

1157-1159 If the count is not `SWAP_MAP_MAX`, simply increment it and return 1 for success

1160-1165 Else the count would overflow so set it to `SWAP_MAP_MAX` and reserve the slot permanently. In reality this condition is virtually impossible

1167-1169 Unlock the swap device and return

1172-1173 If a bad device was used, print out the error message and return failure

**Function:** `swap_free` (*mm/swapfile.c*)

Decrements the corresponding `swap_map` entry for the `swp_entry_t`

```

214 void swap_free(swp_entry_t entry)
215 {
216     struct swap_info_struct * p;
217
218     p = swap_info_get(entry);
219     if (p) {
220         swap_entry_free(p, SWP_OFFSET(entry));
221         swap_info_put(p);
222     }
223 }

```

218 `swap_info_get()` fetches the correct `swap_info_struct` and performs a number of debugging checks to ensure it is a valid area and a valid `swap_map` entry. If all is sane, it will lock the swap device

219-222 If it is valid, the corresponding `swap_map` entry is decremented with `swap_entry_free()` and `swap_info_put` called to free the device

**Function:** `swap_entry_free` (*mm/swapfile.c*)

```

192 static int swap_entry_free(struct swap_info_struct *p,
                             unsigned long offset)
193 {
194     int count = p->swap_map[offset];
195
196     if (count < SWAP_MAP_MAX) {
197         count--;
198         p->swap_map[offset] = count;
199         if (!count) {
200             if (offset < p->lowest_bit)
201                 p->lowest_bit = offset;
202             if (offset > p->highest_bit)
203                 p->highest_bit = offset;
204             nr_swap_pages++;
205         }
206     }
207     return count;
208 }

```

194 Get the current count

196 If the count indicates the slot is not permanently reserved then..

197-198 Decrement the count and store it in the `swap_map`

199 If the count reaches 0, the slot is free so update some information

200-201 If this freed slot is below `lowest_bit`, update `lowest_bit` which indicates the lowest known free slot

202-203 Similarly, update the `highest_bit` if this newly freed slot is above it

204 Increment the count indicating the number of free swap slots

207 Return the current count

**Function: swap\_info\_get** (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This function finds the `swap_info_struct` for the given entry, performs some basic checking and then locks the device.

```

147 static struct swap_info_struct * swap_info_get(swp_entry_t entry)
148 {
149     struct swap_info_struct * p;
150     unsigned long offset, type;
151
152     if (!entry.val)
153         goto out;
154     type = SWP_TYPE(entry);
155     if (type >= nr_swapfiles)
156         goto bad_nofile;
157     p = & swap_info[type];
158     if (!(p->flags & SWP_USED))
159         goto bad_device;
160     offset = SWP_OFFSET(entry);
161     if (offset >= p->max)
162         goto bad_offset;
163     if (!p->swap_map[offset])
164         goto bad_free;
165     swap_list_lock();
166     if (p->prio > swap_info[swap_list.next].prio)
167         swap_list.next = type;
168     swap_device_lock(p);
169     return p;
170
171 bad_free:
172     printk(KERN_ERR "swap_free: %s%08lx\n", Unused_offset, entry.val);
173     goto out;
174 bad_offset:
175     printk(KERN_ERR "swap_free: %s%08lx\n", Bad_offset, entry.val);
176     goto out;
177 bad_device:
178     printk(KERN_ERR "swap_free: %s%08lx\n", Unused_file, entry.val);
179     goto out;
180 bad_nofile:
181     printk(KERN_ERR "swap_free: %s%08lx\n", Bad_file, entry.val);
182 out:
183     return NULL;
184 }

```

152-153 If the supplied entry is NULL, return

154 Get the offset within the `swap_info` array

155-156 Ensure it is a valid area

157 Get the address of the area

158-159 If the area is not active yet, print a bad device error and return

160 Get the offset within the `swap_map`

161-162 Make sure the offset is not after the end of the map

163-164 Make sure the slot is currently in use

165 Lock the swap area list

166-167 If this area is of higher priority than the area that would be next, ensure the current area is used

168-169 Lock the swap device and return the swap area descriptor

**Function: `swap_info_put`** (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This function simply unlocks the area and list

```
186 static void swap_info_put(struct swap_info_struct * p)
187 {
188     swap_device_unlock(p);
189     swap_list_unlock();
190 }
```

188 Unlock the device

189 Unlock the swap area list

**Function: `lookup_swap_cache`** (*mm/swap\_state.c*)

Top level function for finding a page in the swap cache

```
161 struct page * lookup_swap_cache(swp_entry_t entry)
162 {
163     struct page *found;
164
165     found = find_get_page(&swapper_space, entry.val);
166     /*
167      * Unsafe to assert PageSwapCache and mapping on page found:
168      * if SMP nothing prevents swapon from deleting this page from
169      * the swap cache at this moment. find_lock_page would prevent
170      * that, but no need to change: we _have_ got the right page.
171      */
172     INC_CACHE_INFO(find_total);
173     if (found)
174         INC_CACHE_INFO(find_success);
175     return found;
176 }
```

165 `find_get_page()` is the principle function for returning the `struct page`. It uses the normal page hashing and cache functions for quickly finding it

172 Increase the statistic recording the number of times a page was searched for in the cache

173-174 If one was found, increment the successful find count

175 Return the `struct page` or `NULL` if it did not exist

**Function: `find_get_page`** (*include/linux/pagemap.h*)

Top level macro for finding a page in the page cache. It simply looks up the page hash

```
75 #define find_get_page(mapping, index) \
76     __find_get_page(mapping, index, page_hash(mapping, index))
```

76 `page_hash()` locates an entry in the `page_hash_table` based on the `address_space` and offset

**Function: `__find_get_page`** (*mm/filemap.c*)

This function is responsible for finding a `struct page` given an entry in `page_hash_table` as a starting point.

```
915 struct page * __find_get_page(struct address_space *mapping,
916                               unsigned long offset, struct page **hash)
917 {
918     struct page *page;
919
920     /*
921      * We scan the hash list read-only. Addition to and removal from
922      * the hash-list needs a held write-lock.
923      */
924     spin_lock(&pagecache_lock);
925     page = __find_page_nolock(mapping, offset, *hash);
926     if (page)
927         page_cache_get(page);
928     spin_unlock(&pagecache_lock);
929     return page;
930 }
```

924 Acquire the read-only page cache lock

925 Call the page cache traversal function which presumes a lock is held

926-927 If the page was found, obtain a reference to it with `page_cache_get()` so it is not freed prematurely

928 Release the page cache lock

929 Return the page or `NULL` if not found



**Function:** `__find_page_nolock` (*mm/filemap.c*)

This function traverses the hash collision list looking for the page specified by the `address_space` and `offset`.

```

441 static inline struct page * __find_page_nolock(
                                struct address_space *mapping,
                                unsigned long offset,
                                struct page *page)
442 {
443     goto inside;
444
445     for (;;) {
446         page = page->next_hash;
447 inside:
448         if (!page)
449             goto not_found;
450         if (page->mapping != mapping)
451             continue;
452         if (page->index == offset)
453             break;
454     }
455
456 not_found:
457     return page;
458 }

```

443 Begin by examining the first page in the list

448-449 If the page is NULL, the right one could not be found so return NULL

450 If the `address_space` does not match, move to the next page on the collision list

452 If the `offset` matches, return it, else move on

446 Move to the next page on the hash list

457 Return the found page or NULL if not

## 8.4 Activating a Swap Area

**Function:** `sys_swapon` (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This, quite large, function is responsible for the activating of swap space. Broadly speaking the tasks it takes are as follows;

- Find a free `swap_info_struct` in the `swap_info` array and initialise it with default values

- Call `user_path_walk()` which traverses the directory tree for the supplied `specialfile` and populates a `namidata` structure with the available data on the file, such as the `dentry` and the filesystem information for where it is stored (`vfsmount`)
- Populate `swap_info_struct` fields pertaining to the dimensions of the swap area and how to find it. If the swap area is a partition, the block size will be configured to the `PAGE_SIZE` before calculating the size. If it is a file, the information is obtained directly from the `inode`
- Ensure the area is not already activated. If not, allocate a page from memory and read the first page sized slot from the swap area. This page contains information such as the number of good slots and how to populate the `swap_info_struct`→`swap_map` with the bad entries
- Allocate memory with `vmalloc()` for `swap_info_struct`→`swap_map` and initialise each entry with 0 for good slots and `SWAP_MAP_BAD` otherwise. Ideally the header information will be a version 2 file format as version 1 was limited to swap areas of just under 128MiB for architectures with 4KiB page sizes like the x86<sup>1</sup>
- After ensuring the information indicated in the header matches the actual swap area, fill in the remaining information in the `swap_info_struct` such as the maximum number of pages and the available good pages. Update the global statistics for `nr_swap_pages` and `total_swap_pages`
- The swap area is now fully active and initialised and so it is inserted into the swap list in the correct position based on priority of the newly activated area

```

855 asmlinkage long sys_swapon(const char * specialfile, int swap_flags)
856 {
857     struct swap_info_struct * p;
858     struct nameidata nd;
859     struct inode * swap_inode;
860     unsigned int type;
861     int i, j, prev;
862     int error;
863     static int least_priority = 0;
864     union swap_header *swap_header = 0;
865     int swap_header_version;
866     int nr_good_pages = 0;
867     unsigned long maxpages = 1;
868     int swapfilesize;
869     struct block_device *bdev = NULL;
870     unsigned short *swap_map;

```

<sup>1</sup>See the Code Commentary for the comprehensive reason for this

```

871
872     if (!capable(CAP_SYS_ADMIN))
873         return -EPERM;
874     lock_kernel();
875     swap_list_lock();
876     p = swap_info;

```

855 The two parameters are the path to the swap area and the flags for activation

872-873 The activating process must have the CAP\_SYS\_ADMIN capability or be the superuser to activate a swap area

874 Acquire the Big Kernel Lock

875 Lock the list of swap areas

876 Get the first swap area in the swap\_info array

```

877     for (type = 0 ; type < nr_swapfiles ; type++,p++)
878         if (!(p->flags & SWP_USED))
879             break;
880     error = -EPERM;
881     if (type >= MAX_SWAPFILES) {
882         swap_list_unlock();
883         goto out;
884     }
885     if (type >= nr_swapfiles)
886         nr_swapfiles = type+1;
887     p->flags = SWP_USED;
888     p->swap_file = NULL;
889     p->swap_vfsmnt = NULL;
890     p->swap_device = 0;
891     p->swap_map = NULL;
892     p->lowest_bit = 0;
893     p->highest_bit = 0;
894     p->cluster_nr = 0;
895     p->sdev_lock = SPIN_LOCK_UNLOCKED;
896     p->next = -1;
897     if (swap_flags & SWAP_FLAG_PREFER) {
898         p->prio =
899             (swap_flags &
900             SWAP_FLAG_PRIO_MASK)>>SWAP_FLAG_PRIO_SHIFT;
901     } else {
902         p->prio = --least_priority;
903     }
904     swap_list_unlock();

```

Find a free `swap_info_struct` and initialise it with default values

877-879 Cycle through the `swap_info` until a struct is found that is not in use

880 By default the error returned is Permission Denied which indicates the caller did not have the proper permissions or too many swap areas are already in use

881 If no struct was free, `MAX_SWAPFILE` areas have already been activated so unlock the swap list and return

885-886 If the selected swap area is after the last known active area (`nr_swapfiles`), then update `nr_swapfiles`

887 Set the flag indicating the area is in use

888-896 Initialise fields to default values

897-902 If the caller has specified a priority, use it else set it to `least_priority` and decrement it. This way, the swap areas will be prioritised in order of activation

903 Release the swap list lock

```

904         error = user_path_walk(specialfile, &nd);
905         if (error)
906             goto bad_swap_2;
907
908         p->swap_file = nd.dentry;
909         p->swap_vfsmnt = nd.mnt;
910         swap_inode = nd.dentry->d_inode;
911         error = -EINVAL;
912

```

Traverse the VFS and get some information about the special file

904 `user_path_walk()` traverses the directory structure to obtain a `nameidata` structure describing the `specialfile`

905-906 If it failed, return failure

908 Fill in the `swap_file` field with the returned `dentry`

909 Similarly, fill in the `swap_vfsmnt`

910 Record the inode of the special file

911 Now the default error is `EINVAL` indicating that the special file was found but it was not a block device or a regular file

```

913     if (S_ISBLK(swap_inode->i_mode)) {
914         kdev_t dev = swap_inode->i_rdev;
915         struct block_device_operations *bdops;
916         devfs_handle_t de;
917
918         p->swap_device = dev;
919         set_blocksize(dev, PAGE_SIZE);
920
921         bd_acquire(swap_inode);
922         bdev = swap_inode->i_bdev;
923         de = devfs_get_handle_from_inode(swap_inode);
924         bdops = devfs_get_ops(de);
925         if (bdops) bdev->bd_op = bdops;
926
927         error = blkdev_get(bdev, FMODE_READ|FMODE_WRITE, 0,
                           BDEV_SWAP);
928         devfs_put_ops(de); /*Decrement module use count now we're
safe*/
929         if (error)
930             goto bad_swap_2;
931         set_blocksize(dev, PAGE_SIZE);
932         error = -ENODEV;
933         if (!dev || (blk_size[MAJOR(dev)] &&
934                    !blk_size[MAJOR(dev)][MINOR(dev)]))
935             goto bad_swap;
936         swapfilesize = 0;
937         if (blk_size[MAJOR(dev)])
938             swapfilesize = blk_size[MAJOR(dev)][MINOR(dev)]
939                 >> (PAGE_SHIFT - 10);
940     } else if (S_ISREG(swap_inode->i_mode))
941         swapfilesize = swap_inode->i_size >> PAGE_SHIFT;
942     else
943         goto bad_swap;

```

If a partition, configure the block device before calculating the size of the area, else obtain it from the inode for the file.

913 Check if the special file is a block device

914-939 This code segment handles the case where the swap area is a partition

914 Record a pointer to the device structure for the block device

918 Store a pointer to the device structure describing the special file which will be needed for block IO operations

919 Set the block size on the device to be `PAGE_SIZE` as it will be page sized chunks swap is interested in

921 The `bd_acquire()` function increments the usage count for this block device

922 Get a pointer to the `block_device` structure which is a descriptor for the device file which is needed to open it

923 Get a devfs handle if devfs is enabled. devfs is beyond the scope of this document

924-925 Increment the usage count of this device entry

927 Open the block device in read/write mode and set the `BDEV_SWAP` flag which is an enumerated type but is ignored when `do_open()` is called

928 Decrement the use count of the devfs entry

929-930 If an error occurred on open, return failure

931 Set the block size again

932 After this point, the default error is to indicate no device could be found

933-935 Ensure the returned device is ok

937-939 Calculate the size of the swap file as the number of page sized chunks that exist in the block device as indicated by `blk_size`. The size of the swap area is calculated to make sure the information in the swap area is sane

941 If the swap area is a regular file, obtain the size directly from the inode and calculate how many page sized chunks exist

943 If the file is not a block device or regular file, return error

```

945         error = -EBUSY;
946         for (i = 0 ; i < nr_swapfiles ; i++) {
947             struct swap_info_struct *q = &swap_info[i];
948             if (i == type || !q->swap_file)
949                 continue;
950             if (swap_inode->i_mapping ==
951                 q->swap_file->d_inode->i_mapping)
952                 goto bad_swap;
953         }
954         swap_header = (void *) __get_free_page(GFP_USER);
955         if (!swap_header) {
956             printk("Unable to start swapping: out of memory :-)\n");
957             error = -ENOMEM;

```

```

958             goto bad_swap;
959     }
960
961     lock_page(virt_to_page(swap_header));
962     rw_swap_page_nolock(READ, SWP_ENTRY(type,0),
                        (char *) swap_header);
963
964     if (!memcmp("SWAP-SPACE",swap_header->magic.magic,10))
965         swap_header_version = 1;
966     else if (!memcmp("SWAPSPACE2",swap_header->magic.magic,10))
967         swap_header_version = 2;
968     else {
969         printk("Unable to find swap-space signature\n");
970         error = -EINVAL;
971         goto bad_swap;
972     }

```

945 The next check makes sure the area is not already active. If it is, the error `EBUSY` will be returned

946-962 Read through the while `swap_info` struct and ensure the area to be activated is not already active

954-959 Allocate a page for reading the swap area information from disk

961 The function `lock_page()` locks a page and makes sure it is synced with disk if it is file backed. In this case, it'll just mark the page as locked which is required for the `rw_swap_page_nolock()` function

962 Read the first page slot in the swap area into `swap_header`

964-672 Decide which version the swap area information is and set the `swap_header_version` variable with it. If the swap area could not be identified, return `EINVAL`

```

974     switch (swap_header_version) {
975     case 1:
976         memset(((char *) swap_header)+PAGE_SIZE-10,0,10);
977         j = 0;
978         p->lowest_bit = 0;
979         p->highest_bit = 0;
980         for (i = 1 ; i < 8*PAGE_SIZE ; i++) {
981             if (test_bit(i,(char *) swap_header)) {
982                 if (!p->lowest_bit)
983                     p->lowest_bit = i;
984                 p->highest_bit = i;
985                 maxpages = i+1;
986                 j++;

```

```

987             }
988         }
989         nr_good_pages = j;
990         p->swap_map = vmalloc(maxpages * sizeof(short));
991         if (!p->swap_map) {
992             error = -ENOMEM;
993             goto bad_swap;
994         }
995         for (i = 1 ; i < maxpages ; i++) {
996             if (test_bit(i, (char *) swap_header))
997                 p->swap_map[i] = 0;
998             else
999                 p->swap_map[i] = SWAP_MAP_BAD;
1000         }
1001         break;
1002

```

Read in the information needed to populate the `swap_map` when the swap area is version 1.

976 Zero out the magic string identifying the version of the swap area

978-979 Initialise fields in `swap_info_struct` to 0

980-988 A bitmap with `8*PAGE_SIZE` entries is stored in the swap area. The full page, minus 10 bits for the magic string, is used to describe the swap map limiting swap areas to just under 128MiB in size. If the bit is set to 1, there is a slot on disk available. This pass will calculate how many slots are available so a `swap_map` may be allocated

981 Test if the bit for this slot is set

982-983 If the `lowest_bit` field is not yet set, set it to this slot. In most cases, `lowest_bit` will be initialised to 1

984 As long as new slots are found, keep updating the `highest_bit`

985 Count the number of pages

986 `j` is the count of good pages in the area

990 Allocate memory for the `swap_map` with `vmalloc()`

991-994 If memory could not be allocated, return `ENOMEM`

995-1000 For each slot, check if the slot is “good”. If yes, initialise the slot count to 0, else set it to `SWAP_MAP_BAD` so it will not be used

1001 Exit the switch statement



```

1003         case 2:
1004             if (swap_header->info.version != 1) {
1005                 printk(KERN_WARNING
1006                     "Unable to handle swap header version %d\n",
1007                     swap_header->info.version);
1008                 error = -EINVAL;
1009                 goto bad_swap;
1010             }
1011
1012             p->lowest_bit = 1;
1013             maxpages = SWP_OFFSET(SWP_ENTRY(0,~OUL)) - 1;
1014             if (maxpages > swap_header->info.last_page)
1015                 maxpages = swap_header->info.last_page;
1016             p->highest_bit = maxpages - 1;
1017
1018             error = -EINVAL;
1019             if (swap_header->info.nr_badpages > MAX_SWAP_BADPAGES)
1020                 goto bad_swap;
1021
1022             if (!(p->swap_map = vmalloc(maxpages * sizeof(short)))) {
1023                 error = -ENOMEM;
1024                 goto bad_swap;
1025             }
1026
1027             error = 0;
1028             memset(p->swap_map, 0, maxpages * sizeof(short));
1029             for (i=0; i<swap_header->info.nr_badpages; i++) {
1030                 int page = swap_header->info.badpages[i];
1031                 if (page <= 0 ||
1032                     page >= swap_header->info.last_page)
1033                     error = -EINVAL;
1034                 else
1035                     p->swap_map[page] = SWAP_MAP_BAD;
1036             }
1037             nr_good_pages = swap_header->info.last_page -
1038                 swap_header->info.nr_badpages -
1039                 1 /* header page */;
1040             if (error)
1041                 goto bad_swap;
1042         }

```

Read the header information when the file format is version 2

1006-1012 Make absolutely sure we can handle this swap file format and return `EINVAL` if we cannot. Remember that with this version, the `swap_header` struct is placed nicely on disk

1014 Initialise `lowest_bit` to the known lowest available slot

1015-1017 Calculate the `maxpages` initially as the maximum possible size of a `swap_map` and then set it to the size indicated by the information on disk. This ensures the `swap_map` array is not accidentally overloaded

1018 Initialise `highest_bit`

1020-1022 Make sure the number of bad pages that exist does not exceed `MAX_SWAP_BADPAGES`

1025-1028 Allocate memory for the `swap_map` with `vmalloc()`

1031 Initialise the full `swap_map` to 0 indicating all slots are available

1032-1038 Using the information loaded from disk, set each slot that is unusable to `SWAP_MAP_BAD`

1039-1041 Calculate the number of available good pages

1042-1043 Return if an error occurred

```

1045
1046     if (swapfilesize && maxpages > swapfilesize) {
1047         printk(KERN_WARNING
1048             "Swap area shorter than signature indicates\n");
1049         error = -EINVAL;
1050         goto bad_swap;
1051     }
1052     if (!nr_good_pages) {
1053         printk(KERN_WARNING "Empty swap-file\n");
1054         error = -EINVAL;
1055         goto bad_swap;
1056     }
1057     p->swap_map[0] = SWAP_MAP_BAD;
1058     swap_list_lock();
1059     swap_device_lock(p);
1060     p->max = maxpages;
1061     p->flags = SWP_WRITEOK;
1062     p->pages = nr_good_pages;
1063     nr_swap_pages += nr_good_pages;
1064     total_swap_pages += nr_good_pages;
1065     printk(KERN_INFO "Adding Swap: %dk swap-space (priority %d)\n",
1066         nr_good_pages<<(PAGE_SHIFT-10), p->prio);

```

1046-1051 Ensure the information loaded from disk matches the actual dimensions of the swap area. If they do not match, print a warning and return an error

1052-1056 If no good pages were available, return an error

1057 Make sure the first page in the map containing the swap header information is not used. If it was, the header information would be overwritten the first time this area was used

1058-1059 Lock the swap list and the swap device

1060-1062 Fill in the remaining fields in the `swap_info_struct`

1063-1064 Update global statistics for the number of available swap pages (`nr_swap_pages`) and the total number of swap pages (`total_swap_pages`)

1065-1066 Print an informational message about the swap activation

```

1068     /* insert swap space into swap_list: */
1069     prev = -1;
1070     for (i = swap_list.head; i >= 0; i = swap_info[i].next) {
1071         if (p->prio >= swap_info[i].prio) {
1072             break;
1073         }
1074         prev = i;
1075     }
1076     p->next = i;
1077     if (prev < 0) {
1078         swap_list.head = swap_list.next = p - swap_info;
1079     } else {
1080         swap_info[prev].next = p - swap_info;
1081     }
1082     swap_device_unlock(p);
1083     swap_list_unlock();
1084     error = 0;
1085     goto out;

```

1070-1080 Insert the new swap area into the correct slot in the swap list based on priority

1082 Unlock the swap device

1083 Unlock the swap list

1084-1085 Return success

```

1086 bad_swap:
1087     if (bdev)
1088         blkdev_put(bdev, BDEV_SWAP);
1089 bad_swap_2:
1090     swap_list_lock();

```

```

1091     swap_map = p->swap_map;
1092     nd.mnt = p->swap_vfsmnt;
1093     nd.dentry = p->swap_file;
1094     p->swap_device = 0;
1095     p->swap_file = NULL;
1096     p->swap_vfsmnt = NULL;
1097     p->swap_map = NULL;
1098     p->flags = 0;
1099     if (!(swap_flags & SWAP_FLAG_PREFER))
1100         ++least_priority;
1101     swap_list_unlock();
1102     if (swap_map)
1103         vfree(swap_map);
1104     path_release(&nd);
1105 out:
1106     if (swap_header)
1107         free_page((long) swap_header);
1108     unlock_kernel();
1109     return error;
1110 }

```

1087-1088 Drop the reference to the block device

1090-1104 This is the error path where the swap list need to be unlocked, the slot in `swap_info` reset to being unused and the memory allocated for `swap_map` freed if it was assigned

1104 Drop the reference to the special file

1106-1107 Release the page containing the swap header information as it is no longer needed

1108 Drop the Big Kernel Lock

1109 Return the error or success value

## 8.5 Deactivating a Swap Area

**Function:** `sys_swapoff` (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This function is principally concerned with updating the `swap_info_struct` and the swap lists. The main task of paging in all pages in the area is the responsibility of `try_to_unuse()`. The function tasks are broadly

- Call `user_path_walk()` to acquire the information about the special file to be deactivated and then take the BKL

- Remove the `swap_info_struct` from the swap list and update the global statistics on the number of swap pages available (`nr_swap_pages`) and the total number of swap entries (`total_swap_pages`). Once this is acquired, the BKL can be released again
- Call `try_to_unuse()` which will page in all pages from the swap area to be deactivated.
- If there was not enough available memory to page in all the entries, the swap area is reinserted back into the running system as it cannot be simply dropped. If it succeeded, the `swap_info_struct` is placed into an uninitialised state and the `swap_map` memory freed with `vfree()`

```

707 asmlinkage long sys_swapoff(const char * specialfile)
708 {
709     struct swap_info_struct * p = NULL;
710     unsigned short *swap_map;
711     struct nameidata nd;
712     int i, type, prev;
713     int err;
714
715     if (!capable(CAP_SYS_ADMIN))
716         return -EPERM;
717
718     err = user_path_walk(specialfile, &nd);
719     if (err)
720         goto out;
721

```

715-716 Only the superuser or a process with `CAP_SYS_ADMIN` capabilities may deactivate an area

718-719 Acquire information about the special file representing the swap area with `user_path_walk()`. Return on error

```

722     lock_kernel();
723     prev = -1;
724     swap_list_lock();
725     for (type = swap_list.head; type >= 0;
          type = swap_info[type].next) {
726         p = swap_info + type;
727         if ((p->flags & SWP_WRITEOK) == SWP_WRITEOK) {
728             if (p->swap_file == nd.dentry)
729                 break;
730         }
731         prev = type;

```

```

732     }
733     err = -EINVAL;
734     if (type < 0) {
735         swap_list_unlock();
736         goto out_dput;
737     }
738
739     if (prev < 0) {
740         swap_list.head = p->next;
741     } else {
742         swap_info[prev].next = p->next;
743     }
744     if (type == swap_list.next) {
745         /* just pick something that's safe... */
746         swap_list.next = swap_list.head;
747     }
748     nr_swap_pages -= p->pages;
749     total_swap_pages -= p->pages;
750     p->flags = SWP_USED;

```

Acquire the BKL, find the `swap_info_struct` for the area to be deactivated and remove it from the swap list.

722 Acquire the BKL

724 Lock the swap list

725-732 Traverse the swap list and find the `swap_info_struct` for the requested area. Use the `dentry` to identify the area

734-737 If the struct could not be found, return

739-747 Remove from the swap list making sure that this is not the head

748 Update the total number of free swap slots

749 Update the total number of existing swap slots

750 Mark the area as active but may not be written to

```

751     swap_list_unlock();
752     unlock_kernel();
753     err = try_to_unuse(type);

```

751 Unlock the swap list

752 Release the BKL

753 Page in all pages from this swap area

```

754     lock_kernel();
755     if (err) {
756         /* re-insert swap space back into swap_list */
757         swap_list_lock();
758         for (prev = -1, i = swap_list.head; i >= 0; prev = i, i =
swap_info[i].next)
759             if (p->prio >= swap_info[i].prio)
760                 break;
761         p->next = i;
762         if (prev < 0)
763             swap_list.head = swap_list.next = p - swap_info;
764         else
765             swap_info[prev].next = p - swap_info;
766         nr_swap_pages += p->pages;
767         total_swap_pages += p->pages;
768         p->flags = SWP_WRITEOK;
769         swap_list_unlock();
770         goto out_dput;
771     }

```

Acquire the BKL. If we failed to page in all pages, then reinsert the area into the swap list

754 Acquire the BKL

757 Lock the swap list

758-765 Reinsert the area into the swap list. The position it is inserted at depends on the swap area priority

766-767 Update the global statistics

768 Mark the area as safe to write to again

769-770 Unlock the swap list and return

```

772     if (p->swap_device)
773         blkdev_put(p->swap_file->d_inode->i_bdev, BDEV_SWAP);
774     path_release(&nd);
775
776     swap_list_lock();
777     swap_device_lock(p);
778     nd.mnt = p->swap_vfsmnt;
779     nd.dentry = p->swap_file;
780     p->swap_vfsmnt = NULL;
781     p->swap_file = NULL;
782     p->swap_device = 0;

```

```

783         p->max = 0;
784         swap_map = p->swap_map;
785         p->swap_map = NULL;
786         p->flags = 0;
787         swap_device_unlock(p);
788         swap_list_unlock();
789         vfree(swap_map);
790         err = 0;
791
792 out_dput:
793         unlock_kernel();
794         path_release(&nd);
795 out:
796         return err;
797 }

```

Else the swap area was successfully deactivated to close the block device and mark the `swap_info_struct` free

772-773 Close the block device

774 Release the path information

776-777 Acquire the swap list and swap device lock

778-786 Reset the fields in `swap_info_struct` to default values

787-788 Release the swap list and swap device

788 Free the memory used for the `swap_map`

793 Release the BKL

794 Release the path information in the event we reached here via the error path

796 Return success or failure

**Function:** `try_to_unuse` (*mm/swapfile.c*)

This function is heavily commented in the source code albeit it consists of speculation or is slightly inaccurate. The comments are omitted here.

```

513 static int try_to_unuse(unsigned int type)
514 {
515         struct swap_info_struct * si = &swap_info[type];
516         struct mm_struct *start_mm;
517         unsigned short *swap_map;
518         unsigned short swcount;
519         struct page *page;

```



```

520     swp_entry_t entry;
521     int i = 0;
522     int retval = 0;
523     int reset_overflow = 0;
524
539     start_mm = &init_mm;
540     atomic_inc(&init_mm.mm_users);
541

```

539-540 The starting `mm_struct` to page in pages for is `init_mm`. The count is incremented even though this particular struct will not disappear to prevent having to write special cases in the remainder of the function

```

555     while ((i = find_next_to_unuse(si, i)) {
556         /*
557          * Get a page for the entry, using the existing swap
558          * cache page if there is one. Otherwise, get a clean
559          * page and read the swap into it.
560          */
561         swap_map = &si->swap_map[i];
562         entry = SWP_ENTRY(type, i);
563         page = read_swap_cache_async(entry);
564         if (!page) {
565             if (!*swap_map)
566                 continue;
567             retval = -ENOMEM;
568             break;
569         }
570
571         /*
572          * Don't hold on to start_mm if it looks like exiting.
573          */
574         if (atomic_read(&start_mm->mm_users) == 1) {
575             mmput(start_mm);
576             start_mm = &init_mm;
577             atomic_inc(&init_mm.mm_users);
578         }
579     }

```

555 This is the beginning of the major loop in this function. Starting from the beginning of the `swap_map`, it searches for the next entry to be freed with `find_next_to_unuse()` until all swap map entries have been paged in

561-563 Get the `swp_entry_t` and call `read_swap_cache_async()` to find the page in the swap cache or have a new page allocated for reading in from the disk

564-575 If we failed to get the page, it means the slot has already been freed independently by another process or thread (process could be exiting elsewhere) or we are out of memory. If independently freed, we continue to the next map, else we return ENOMEM

580 Check to make sure this mm is not exiting. If it is, decrement its count and go back to `init_mm`

```

586          /*
587          * Wait for and lock page.  When do_swap_page races with
588          * try_to_unuse, do_swap_page can handle the fault much
589          * faster than try_to_unuse can locate the entry.  This
590          * apparently redundant "wait_on_page" lets try_to_unuse
591          * defer to do_swap_page in such a case - in some tests,
592          * do_swap_page and try_to_unuse repeatedly compete.
593          */
594          wait_on_page(page);
595          lock_page(page);
596
597          /*
598          * Remove all references to entry, without blocking.
599          * Whenever we reach init_mm, there's no address space
600          * to search, but use it as a reminder to search shmem.
601          */
602          swcount = *swap_map;
603          if (swcount > 1) {
604              flush_page_to_ram(page);
605              if (start_mm == &init_mm)
606                  shmem_unuse(entry, page);
607              else
608                  unuse_process(start_mm, entry, page);
609          }

```

594 Wait on the page to complete IO. Once it returns, we know for a fact the page exists in memory with the same information as that on disk

595 Lock the page

602 Get the swap map reference count

603 If the count is positive then...

605 As the page is about to be inserted into proces page tables, it must be freed from the D-Cache or the process may not "see" changes made to the page by the kernel

605-606 If we are using the `init_mm`, call `shmem_unuse()` which will free the page from any shared memory regions that are in use

```

608 Else update the PTE in the current mm which references this page

610         if (*swap_map > 1) {
611             int set_start_mm = (*swap_map >= swcount);
612             struct list_head *p = &start_mm->mmlist;
613             struct mm_struct *new_start_mm = start_mm;
614             struct mm_struct *mm;
615
616             spin_lock(&mmlist_lock);
617             while (*swap_map > 1 &&
618                 (p = p->next) != &start_mm->mmlist) {
619                 mm = list_entry(p, struct mm_struct,
620                               mmlist);
621                 swcount = *swap_map;
622                 if (mm == &init_mm) {
623                     set_start_mm = 1;
624                     shmem_unuse(entry, page);
625                 } else
626                     unuse_process(mm, entry, page);
627                 if (set_start_mm && *swap_map < swcount) {
628                     new_start_mm = mm;
629                     set_start_mm = 0;
630                 }
631             }
632             atomic_inc(&new_start_mm->mm_users);
633             spin_unlock(&mmlist_lock);
634             mmput(start_mm);
635             start_mm = new_start_mm;
636         }

```

610-635 If an entry still exists, begin traversing through all `mm_structs` finding references to this page and update the respective PTE

616 Lock the mm list

617-630 Keep searching until all `mm_structs` have been found. Do not traverse the full list more than once

619 Get the `mm_struct` for this list entry

621-625 Call `shmem_unuse()` if the mm is `init_mm`, else call `unuse_process()` to traverse the process page tables and update the PTE

626-627 Record if we need to start searching `mm_structs` starting from `init_mm` again

```

650         if (*swap_map == SWAP_MAP_MAX) {
651             swap_list_lock();
652             swap_device_lock(si);
653             nr_swap_pages++;
654             *swap_map = 1;
655             swap_device_unlock(si);
656             swap_list_unlock();
657             reset_overflow = 1;
658         }

```

650 If the swap map entry is permanently mapped, we have to hope that all processes have their PTEs updated to point to the page and in reality the swap map entry is free. In reality, it is highly unlikely a slot would be permanently reserved in the first place

641-657 Lock the list and swap device, set the swap map entry to 1, unlock them again and record that a reset overflow occurred

```

674         if ((*swap_map > 1) && PageDirty(page) &&
675             PageSwapCache(page)) {
676             rw_swap_page(WRITE, page);
677             lock_page(page);
678         }
679         if (PageSwapCache(page))
680             delete_from_swap_cache(page);

```

674-677 In the very rare event a reference still exists to the page, write the page back to disk so at least if another process really has a reference to it, it'll copy the page back in from disk correctly

678-679 Delete the page from the swap cache so the page swap daemon will not use the page under any circumstances

```

686         SetPageDirty(page);
687         UnlockPage(page);
688         page_cache_release(page);

```

686 Mark the page dirty so that the swap out code will preserve the page and if it needs to remove it again, it'll write it correctly to a new swap area

687 Unlock the page

688 Release our reference to it in the page cache

```

695         if (current->need_resched)
696             schedule();
697     }

```

```
698
699     mmput(start_mm);
700     if (reset_overflow) {
701         printk(KERN_WARNING "swapoff: cleared swap entry
                                overflow\n");
702         swap_overflow = 0;
703     }
704     return retval;
705 }
```

695-696 Call `schedule()` if necessary so the deactivation of swap does not hog the entire CPU

699 Drop our reference to the mm

700-703 If a permanently mapped page had to be removed, then print out a warning so that in the very unlikely event an error occurs later, there will be a hint to what might have happened

704 Return success or failure

# Index

activate\_lock, 247  
activate\_page\_nolock, 247  
add\_page\_to\_active\_list, 245  
add\_page\_to\_inactive\_list, 245  
add\_to\_page\_cache, 248  
\_\_add\_to\_page\_cache, 249  
add\_to\_swap\_cache, 278  
address\_space, 133  
alloc\_area\_pmd, 55  
alloc\_area\_pte, 56  
\_\_alloc\_bootmem, 16  
alloc\_bootmem, 16  
\_\_alloc\_bootmem\_core, 18  
\_\_alloc\_bootmem\_node, 17  
alloc\_bootmem\_node, 17  
alloc\_bounce\_bh, 232  
alloc\_bounce\_page, 234  
alloc\_mm, 126  
alloc\_one\_pte, 175  
alloc\_page, 46  
alloc\_pages, 30  
\_alloc\_pages, 32  
\_\_alloc\_pages, 33  
allocate\_mm, 126  
arch\_get\_unmapped\_area, 138, 151  
  
bootmem\_data, 8  
bounce\_end\_io, 237  
bounce\_end\_io\_read, 235  
bounce\_end\_io\_write, 235  
BREAK\_GFP\_ORDER\_HI, 110  
BREAK\_GFP\_ORDER\_LO, 110  
  
cache\_cache, 121  
CACHE\_NAMELEN, 110  
calc\_vm\_flags, 139  
can\_vma\_merge, 161  
cc\_data, 113  
cc\_entry, 114  
ccupdate\_t, 118  
CHECK\_PAGE, 105  
clock\_searchp, 80  
contig\_page\_data, 32  
copy\_from\_high\_bh, 236  
copy\_mm, 127  
copy\_one\_pte, 176  
copy\_to\_high\_bh\_irq, 236  
cpu\_vm\_mask, 126  
cpucache, 113  
create\_buffers, 230  
  
def\_flags, 126  
DEFAULT\_MAX\_MAP\_COUNT, 138  
del\_page\_from\_active\_list, 246  
del\_page\_from\_inactive\_list, 246  
do\_anonymous\_page, 214  
do\_ccupdate\_local, 118, 119  
do\_mlock, 179  
do\_mmap\_pgoff, 136  
do\_mremap, 162  
do\_munmap, 188  
do\_no\_page, 211  
do\_page\_fault, 198  
do\_swap\_page, 216  
drain\_cpu\_caches, 120  
  
enable\_all\_cpucaches, 114  
enable\_cpucache, 114, 115  
exit\_mmap, 130, 196  
expand, 37, 39  
  
\_\_find\_get\_page, 284  
find\_get\_page, 284  
\_\_find\_page\_nolock, 285  
find\_vma, 146  
find\_vma\_intersection, 149

- find\_vma\_prepare, 154
- find\_vma\_prev, 148
- flush\_all\_zero\_pkmmaps, 226
- free\_all\_bootmem, 27
- free\_all\_bootmem\_core, 28
- free\_area\_pmd, 60
- free\_area\_pte, 61
- free\_block, 108
- \_\_free\_block, 109
- free\_bootmem, 23
- free\_bootmem\_core, 23
- \_\_free\_page, 48
- \_\_free\_pages, 41
- free\_pages, 41, 47
- free\_pages\_init, 26
- \_\_free\_pages\_ok, 41
  
- g\_cpucache\_up, 114
- \_\_get\_dma\_pages, 46
- \_\_get\_free\_page, 46
- \_\_get\_free\_pages, 46
- get\_one\_pte, 174
- get\_swap\_page, 273
- get\_unmapped\_area, 150
- get\_vm\_area, 52
- get\_zeroed\_page, 47
- gfp\_mask, 32
  
- handle\_mm\_fault, 208
- handle\_pte\_fault, 209
  
- \_\_init, 26
- init\_bootmem, 12
- init\_bootmem\_core, 13
- init\_bootmem\_node, 12
- init\_emergency\_pool, 238
- init\_mm, 127
- INIT\_MM, 127
- \_\_insert\_vm\_struct, 152
  
- kfree, 112
- km\_type, 228
- kmalloc, 111
- kmap, 222
- kmap\_atomic, 229
- kmap\_high, 223
  
- kmem\_cache, 121
- \_\_kmem\_cache\_alloc (SMP Case), 98
- \_\_kmem\_cache\_alloc (UP Case), 97
- kmem\_cache\_alloc, 97
- kmem\_cache\_alloc\_batch, 103
- kmem\_cache\_alloc\_head, 100
- kmem\_cache\_alloc\_one, 100
- kmem\_cache\_alloc\_one\_tail, 101
- kmem\_cache\_create, 64
- kmem\_cache\_destroy, 79
- kmem\_cache\_estimate, 74
- kmem\_cache\_free, 104
- \_\_kmem\_cache\_free, 105
- kmem\_cache\_free\_one, 107
- kmem\_cache\_grow, 88, 89
- kmem\_cache\_init, 121, 122
- kmem\_cache\_init\_objs, 95
- kmem\_cache\_reap, 81
- kmem\_cache\_shrink, 75
- \_\_kmem\_cache\_shrink, 77
- \_\_kmem\_cache\_shrink\_locked, 77
- kmem\_cache\_sizes\_init, 109
- kmem\_cache\_slabmgmt, 86
- kmem\_find\_general\_cachep, 88
- kmem\_freepages, 123
- kmem\_getpages, 122
- kmem\_slab\_destroy, 94
- kmem\_tune\_cpucache, 114, 116
- kswapd, 240
- kswapd\_balance, 243
- kswapd\_balance\_pgdat, 243
- kswapd\_can\_sleep, 242
- kswapd\_can\_sleep\_pgdat, 242
- kswapd\_init, 240
- kunmap, 227
- kunmap\_atomic, 230
- kunmap\_high, 227
  
- locked\_vm, 126
- lookup\_swap\_cache, 283
- lru\_cache\_add, 244
- lru\_cache\_del, 245
- \_\_lru\_cache\_del, 246
- map\_new\_virtual, 224

- mark\_page\_accessed, 247
- max\_map\_count, 138
- mem\_init, 24
- mlock\_fixup, 182
- mlock\_fixup\_all, 184
- mlock\_fixup\_end, 185
- mlock\_fixup\_middle, 186
- mlock\_fixup\_start, 184
- mm\_alloc, 127
- mm\_drop, 130
- mm\_init, 126, 130
- mmap\_sem, 126
- mmdrop, 131
- \_\_mmdrop, 132
- mmlist, 126
- mmput, 130, 131
- move\_one\_page, 174
- move\_page\_tables, 172
- move\_vma, 167
  
- one\_highpage\_init, 27
  
- Page Frame Number (PFN), 9
- page\_cache\_get, 248
- page\_cache\_release, 248
- ptep\_get\_and\_clear, 63
  
- REAP\_SCANLEN, 80
- refill\_inactive, 253
- reserve\_bootmem, 14
- reserve\_bootmem\_core, 14
- reserve\_bootmem\_node, 14
- rmqueue, 37
- rss, 126
  
- scan\_swap\_map, 275
- SET\_PAGE\_CACHE, 92
- SET\_PAGE\_SLAB, 92
- setup\_memory, 9
- shrink\_cache, 254
- shrink\_caches, 249
- slab\_break\_gfp\_order, 110
- smp\_function\_all\_cpus, 119
- STATS\_INC\_GROWN, 92
- swap\_duplicate, 279
- swap\_entry\_free, 281
- swap\_free, 280
- swap\_info\_get, 282
- swap\_info\_put, 283
- swap\_out, 262
- swap\_out\_mm, 263
- swap\_out\_pgdn, 266
- swap\_out\_pmd, 267
- swap\_out\_vma, 265
- SWP\_ENTRY, 275
- sys\_mlock, 176
- sys\_mlockall, 178
- sys\_mmap2, 136
- sys\_mremap, 161
- sys\_munlock, 181
- sys\_munlockall, 182
- sys\_swapoff, 296
- sys\_swapon, 285
  
- total\_vm, 126
- try\_to\_free\_pages, 252
- try\_to\_free\_pages\_zone, 252
- try\_to\_swap\_out, 268
- try\_to\_unuse, 300
  
- unmap\_fixup, 192
  
- vfree, 57
- vma\_link, 155
- \_\_vma\_link, 156
- \_\_vma\_link\_file, 157
- \_\_vma\_link\_list, 157
- \_\_vma\_link\_rb, 157
- vma\_merge, 158
- vmalloc, 49
- \_\_vmalloc, 51
- vmalloc\_area\_pages, 54
- vmfree\_area\_pages, 60